The History of al-Ṭabarî

VOLUME XIV

The Conquest of Iran

TRANSLATED BY G. REX SMITH
The Conquest of Iran  
Volume XIV  
Translated by G. Rex Smith

This volume covers the years 21-23/641-43 of the caliphate of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb. It can be divided into two distinct and almost equal parts: The first concerning the Muslim conquests in Iran and the east, and the second concerning 'Umar himself, his assassination, and an assessment of the caliph and the man.

The volume begins with the caliphal order to the Muslim troops, recently victorious at the famous battle of Nihāwand in 21/641, to penetrate farther into infidel lands in the east. The might of the Persian empire had been broken, and a golden opportunity offered itself to the Muslim community to expand its territories. The territorial gains thus achieved are recounted in this volume. Moving out of the garrison towns of al-Kufah and al-Basrah, the Muslim forces' conquests of Isfahān, Hamadhān, al-Rayy, Qūmis, Jurjān, Tabaristān, Azerbaijan, Khurāsān, parts of Fārs province, Kirmān, Siṣṭān and Makrān as far as the Indus, are all described in these pages.

Contained in these accounts of far-reaching conquests are the peace documents, which are of considerable historical importance. They are typically the documents issued by the victorious Muslim commanders on the ground to the subdued local inhabitants, laying out in precise terms the obligations of the latter toward their Muslim conquerors in return for safe conduct.

Leaving the Muslim forces on the bank of Indus, Tabarī switches his account to Medina, where in 23/643 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb was assassinated by a Christian slave. After full accounts of this deed, the reader is provided with details of the caliph's genealogy, his physical description, his birth date and age, the names of his children and wives, and the period of time he was a Muslim. A lengthy section follows, in which the deeds of 'Umar are recounted in anecdotal form. There are also quotations from his addresses to his people and some poetic eulogies addressed to him.

The volume ends with 'Umar's appointment of the electoral council, five senior figures in the Islamic community, to decide on his successor, and the fascinating and historically greatly important account of the workings of the council with all the cut and thrust of debate and the politicking behind the scenes. Thus was 'Uthmān b. 'Affān appointed to succeed 'Umar.
THE HISTORY OF AL-ṬABARĪ
AN ANNOTATED TRANSLATION

VOLUME XIV

The Conquest of Iran
A.D. 641–643 / A.H. 21–23
The History of al-Ṭabarî

Editorial Board
Ihsan Abbas, University of Jordan, Amman
C. E. Bosworth, The University of Manchester
Franz Rosenthal, Yale University
Everett K. Rowson, The University of Pennsylvania
Ehsan Yar-Shater, Columbia University (General Editor)

Estelle Whelan, Editorial Coordinator

Center for Iranian Studies
Columbia University

SUNY
SERIES IN NEAR EASTERN STUDIES
Said Amir Arjomand, Editor

The preparation of this volume was made possible in part by a grant from the National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency.
The History of al-Ṭabarī

(Ta’rikh al-rusul wa’l-mulūk)

Volume XIV

The Conquest of Iran

translated and annotated
by

G. Rex Smith

The University of Manchester

State University of New York Press
THE HISTORY OF PROPHETS AND KINGS (Ta'rikh al-rusul wa'l-mulūk) by Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. Jarir al-Ṭabarī (839–923), here rendered as The History of al-Ṭabarī, is by common consent the most important universal history produced in the world of Islam. It has been translated here in its entirety for the first time for the benefit of non-Arabists, with historical and philological notes for those interested in the particulars of the text.

Al-Ṭabarī’s monumental work explores the history of the ancient nations, with special emphasis on biblical peoples and prophets, the legendary and factual history of ancient Iran, and, in great detail, the rise of Islam, the life of the Prophet Muḥammad, and the history of the Islamic world down to the year 915. The first volume of this translation contains a biography of al-Ṭabarī and a discussion of the method, scope, and value of his work. It also provides information on some of the technical considerations that have guided the work of the translators.

The History has been divided here into thirty-nine volumes, each of which covers about 200 pages of the original Arabic text in the Leiden edition. An attempt has been made to draw the dividing lines between the individual volumes in such a way that each is to some degree independent and can be read as such. The page numbers of the Leiden edition appear in the margins of the translated volumes.

Al-Ṭabarī very often quotes his sources verbatim and traces the chain of transmission (īsnād) to an original source. The
chains of transmitters are, for the sake of brevity, rendered by only a dash (—) between the individual links in the chain. Thus, “According to Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn ʿIshaq” means that al-Ṭabarī received the report from Ibn Ḥumayd, who said that he was told by Salamah, who said that he was told by Ibn ʿIshaq, and so on. The numerous subtle and important differences in the original Arabic wording have been disregarded.

The table of contents at the beginning of each volume gives a brief survey of the topics dealt with in that particular volume. It also includes the headings and subheadings as they appear in al-Ṭabarī’s text, as well as those occasionally introduced by the translator.

Well-known place names, such as, for instance, Mecca, Baghdad, Jerusalem, Damascus, and the Yemen, are given in their English spellings. Less common place names, which are the vast majority, are transliterated. Biblical figures appear in the accepted English spelling. Iranian names are usually transcribed according to their Arabic forms, and the presumed Iranian forms are often discussed in the footnotes.

Technical terms have been translated wherever possible, but some, such as dirham and imām, have been retained in Arabic forms. Others that cannot be translated with sufficient precision have been retained and italicized, as well as footnoted.

The annotation aims chiefly at clarifying difficult passages, identifying individuals and place names, and discussing textual difficulties. Much leeway has been left to the translators to include in the footnotes whatever they consider necessary and helpful.

The bibliographies list all the sources mentioned in the annotation.

The index in each volume contains all the names of persons and places referred to in the text, as well as those mentioned in the notes as far as they refer to the medieval period. It does not include the names of modern scholars. A general index, it is hoped, will appear after all the volumes have been published.

For further details concerning the series and acknowledgments, see Preface to Volume 1.

Ehsan Yar-Shater
Contents

Preface / v
Abbreviations / xi
Translator's Foreword / xiii
Map 1. The Area of the Conquests of Iran, 21-23/641-44 / xxi

The Events of the Year 21 (cont'd) (641-642) / 1
What Happened in This Year, 21—'Umar's Previously
 Mentioned Orders to the Two Armies / 2
Iṣfahān / 6
The Account of [the Attack on Iṣfahān] / 10

The Events of the Year 22 (642-643) / 17
The Conquest of al-Rayy / 24
The Conquest of Qūmis / 27
The Conquest of Jurjān / 28
The Conquest of Ṭabaristān / 30
The Conquest of Azerbaijan / 31
The Conquest of al-Bāb / 34
Information on ['Umar's Division of the Conquered
 Lands] / 43
Contents

The Reason for [the Dismissal of 'Ammār] / 47
Yazdajird's Journey to Khurāsān and the Reason for It / 51

The Events of the Year 23 (643–644) / 64

The Conquest of Tawwaj / 64
The Conquest of Iṣṭakhr / 66
The Conquest of Fasā and Darābijrīd / 70
The Conquest of Kirmān / 73
The Conquest of Sijistān / 75
The Conquest of Makrān / 77
Bayrudh in al-Ahwāz / 78
Salamah b. Qays al-Ashja'ī and the Kurds / 83
'Umar's Assassination / 89
The Sources of [the Conflicting Report of 'Umar's Death] / 93
'Umar's Genealogy / 95
The Sources of [the Report that Muḥammad First Called 'Umar al-Fārūq] / 96
The Sources of [the Report that the People of the Book Did That] / 96
A Description of 'Umar / 96
His Birth and Age / 97
Some of the Sources of [the Report that He Was Fifty-Five Years Old] / 98
The Sources of [the Report that He Was Fifty-Three Years Old] / 99
The Sources of [the Report that He Was Sixty-Three Years Old] / 99
The Sources of [the Report that He Was Sixty-One Years Old] / 99
The Sources of [the Report that He Was Sixty Years Old] / 99
The Names of His Children and Wives / 100
When He Became a Muslim / 102
The Sources of This Report / 102
Some of His Memorable Deeds / 103
Relevant Information on ['Umar's Night Visits] / 109
'Umar's Being Called Commander of the Faithful / 113
Information on This Matter / 114
His Institution of the [Islamic] Dating System / 114
Contents

['Umar's] Carrying a Whip and His Instituting the State Registrars / 115
Some Excerpts from His Addresses / 123
Another Address / 124
Another Address / 125
Another Address / 126
Those Who Have Lamented and Elegized 'Umar—Some of the Elegies Written about Him / 129
Some of 'Umar's Meritorious Deeds Not Previously Recorded / 131
The Account of the Electoral Council / 143
'Umar's Governors in the Garrison Towns / 164

Bibliography / 167

Index / 173
Abbreviations

Cairo: al-Ṭabarī, Taʾrīkh, Cairo edition.
CHIR: Cambridge History of Iran.
CHIS: Cambridge History of Islam.
Elr: Encyclopaedia Iranica.
El1: Encyclopaedia of Islam, 1st ed.
El2: Encyclopaedia of Islam, 2nd ed.
GAS: F. Sezgin, Geschichte des arabischen Schrifttums.
Glossarium: Glossary in al-Ṭabarī, Taʾrīkh: Indices, Introductio, Glossarium, Addenda et Emendanda.
SEI: Shorter Encyclopaedia of Islam.
Ṭabarī: al-Ṭabarī, Taʾrīkh, Leiden ed.
Translator's Foreword

This volume of Ṭabarî's text (I, pp. 2634–2798 of the Leiden edition and IV, pp. 137–241 of the Cairo edition) covers the period 211–23/641–43 and can be divided into two distinct and almost equal parts: the first concerning the conquests under 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb in Iran and the east, which gives this volume its title, and the second concerning 'Umar himself, his assassination, and an assessment of the caliph and the man.

The text translated in this volume owes much to Ṭabarî's informant Sayf b. 'Umar, a controversial figure who has occasioned some comment. Although much trusted by Ṭabarî for the early period of Islamic history, Sayf is not used as an informant by others. He has, for example, been accused of presenting inconsistent accounts and of overemphasizing the role of his own tribe, Tamim. References to assessments of the mysterious Sayf are given below, p. 1 n. 3.

Historical Background

'Umar had assumed the caliphate in 13/634, the immediate successor of the first caliph, Abū Bakr (11–13/632–34). Abū Bakr's first major problem had been how to hold together the young Islamic community that had been built by the Prophet and that immediately after his death threatened to disintegrate. Some tribes of the Peninsula felt no further loyalty to the community and its leader, and they had anyway, increasingly with
their geographical distance from Medina, only tenuous links
with Muhammad and the religion of Islam. This cannot be the
place for a detailed discussion of Abū Bakr's determined efforts
to bring these tribes back into the fold, efforts that have gone
down in history as the so-called Riddah wars or the wars of
Apostasy. What can be said with confidence is that these Riddah
wars, as the Muslim warriors fighting them moved farther and
farther away from the center of Islam and out of the control of
the head of the Islamic community [a point to which I shall
return below in the context of 'Umar himself], gradually merged
into wars of conquest. Whatever one's view of the military
activities of the Muslims during the brief caliphate of Abū Bakr,
it is true to say that by the time of 'Umar's assumption of the
caliphate in 13/634 we are talking only in terms of conquest.

The Conquests

Two fronts initially opened up, the Syrian and the Iraqi. The
former attracted less attention from Ṭabari, who compiled all
history in terms of an eastern center with every other area or
province on the periphery. Without becoming too involved
in the massive problem of the discrepancies in the dates of
the conquests [a second point to which I feel compelled to
return briefly below], we can probably say that the majority of
Greater Syria had fallen to the Muslims by 15/636 and that the
Byzantines under Heraclius were in full retreat from the area.
On the second front, according to Ṭabari's accounts, Iraqi towns
such as Babylon, al-Madā'in, the old Sasanian capital; and
Ṭikrit had been taken by the Muslims in the year 16/637–638.
Of tremendous importance was the resounding victory secured by
the Muslim forces under Sa'd b. Abī Waqqāṣ at al-Qādisiyah,
when a huge Sasanian army under Rustam dissolved in panic.
Such a victory left the Sasanian empire to the east vulnerable to
attack and penetration by the forces of Islam. As we shall see
from Ṭabari's accounts of the eastern conquests in this volume,
they were not slow to take advantage of their success and of the
weakness of a once mighty empire. In the following year (17/
638–639), again according to Ṭabari, al-Kūfah was founded as a
Muslim garrison town in southern Iraq, and the conquering
armies began to raid into the province of Fārs.
Turning aside almost incidentally from his other accounts under the year 20/640–641 to chronicle the events of the conquest of Egypt and Alexandria, Tabari then recounts the details of one further major Muslim victory in the east, the last before the text of which this volume is the translation opens. This victory happened in 21/641 at a place called Nihāwand, cast of Baghdad and south of Hamadhan (see map). Sa’d once again led the Muslim forces. The defeated Persians were on this occasion led by their last Sasanian emperor, Yazdajird III, who, however, survived the defeat. His further attempts to undermine the Islamic eastern conquests can be read below. With two such major victories behind them, al-Qadisiyyah and Nihāwand, the Muslims stood poised to penetrate into the territories of the Sasanian empire and beyond. At this point this volume opens.

The following text covers the last two years of 'Umar's life, 21–23/641–643. Under those years Tabari's accounts of the territorial gains of the Muslim armies, who move out of the two garrison towns of al-Kūfah and al-Baṣrah, include such important centers and areas as Isfahān (21/641–642), Hamadhān, al-Rayy, Qūmis, Jurjān, Tabaristan, Azerbaijan, Khurāsān (all in 22/642–643), parts of Fars province, Kirmān, Sijistān, and Makrān as far as the Indus (all listed under 23/643–644, also the year of 'Umar's assassination).

Neither Tabari himself nor his informants were at all interested in military strategy, and it should be stated at the outset that the reader only rarely finds reference to tactics, and then usually of a very primitive kind. The almost stereotyped pattern that emerges is as follows. The Muslim supreme commander reaches his goal; frequently the names of his generals in the van, in the rear, and with the two wings of the army are all given as a prelude to the battle. A siege may ensue; there may even be personal combat to decide the issue, and this frequently provides an interesting anecdote. If battle is actually joined, the divinely guided Muslim army defeats the polytheist enemy. Muslims are occasionally killed, but they are invariably heroes who lay down their life in God's cause and who frequently have a premonition of their fate and prepare for the supreme sacrifice. The enemy may, however, see the strength and moral superiority of the Muslim forces and that is sufficient to bring about a quest for peace without fighting.
The Peace Documents

The several peace documents given verbatim by Ṭabarī in this text are of some interest and would indeed repay deeper study. On the important question of authenticity, perhaps all that can be said in such a brief introduction is that it might be wise to assume that the texts, although presented verbatim, represent the fourth/tenth-century view of what such texts might have said rather than the first/seventh-century original. In particular, the relationship between the circumstances of the peace and the contents of the document itself might perhaps be further investigated. Invariably, in return for their safe-conduct and the freedom to practice their faith and live in accordance with their own laws, the conquered peoples are required to assist the Muslims in various ways. They are required to give sound advice, to provide hospitality, to keep the roads free of highwaymen, to guide the Muslims, and so on. Most important, they must in all cases pay tribute to the Muslims, this payment being imposed on all those above the age of puberty, although at a rate that they can afford to pay. The tantalizing hints in this volume of the associated questions of military service and exemption from the tribute should also be looked at more closely. The document spells out the dire consequences, should the conquered peoples harm the Muslims in any way or break the terms of the document.

Control of the Conquests

With the peace document signed and witnessed, Ṭabarī tells the reader of the Muslim commander's despatch of trusty messengers to inform the caliph in Medina of the victory and to deliver the fifths of the booty for the community treasury in accordance with early established Islamic practice. 'Umar frequently uses the messenger's return to send further directions and military orders to his commanders in the field. Indeed, letters and documents pass freely between caliph and general. The reader should perhaps, however, be aware that 'Umar may not have controlled the Muslim military effort in quite the way in which Ṭabarī's accounts would have us believe. Such reports appear to ignore
entirely the sheer geographical impossibility of delivering documents hundreds of miles in frequently appallingly difficult terrain, perhaps through only half-subdued regions, in short periods of time. The occasional message from Medina is of course possible, but one can perhaps assume that the military and administrative decisions in connection with the conquests that had to be taken were taken by commanders on the spot in the front line.

*Dates of the Conquests*

One of the greatest problems facing students of early Islamic history is that of the precise dates and chronology of the conquests. It is a problem that can be seen at its most acute in Fred Donner's *The Early Islamic Conquests*, in this case with particular reference to the Syrian front. The serious discrepancies in the dating of campaigns and battles of conquest have even been used to discredit in general the early Muslim sources that touch on the conquest. One can do little more here than to indicate that such a serious problem does exist and that perhaps the reader should beware. It should be stressed, however, that, serious though these discrepancies in the accounts of the conquests, and in particular in the dates provided, undoubtedly are, they certainly cannot be used to discredit the text as a whole.

*‘Umar—the Caliph and the Man*

The second part of the text here translated begins with the graphic account of ‘Umar’s assassination by a Christian slave, Abū Lu’lu’ah, in 23/643. Several dates are given for his death. We are further presented with his genealogy, physical descriptions, different accounts of his birth date and age, the names of his children and wives, and the period of time that he was a Muslim. A lengthy section follows recounting in anecdotal form the deeds of ‘Umar, followed by examples of several of his Friday addresses. Some poetic eulogies are quoted. The volume ends with ‘Umar’s appointment of the electoral council, five senior figures in the Islamic community, to decide on his successor and the fascinating account of the workings of the council,
with all the cut and thrust of debate and the politicking behind the scenes.

Physically 'Umar was immensely tall, head and shoulders above the crowd. Although he was dark, we are told that his skin was pale and perhaps blotchy. He had a bald patch on the top of his head. He was never elegantly dressed, quite the opposite in fact, and is invariably portrayed in a simple waist wrapper. By natural disposition, he was rough and ready, eating at home inferior food with some greed and toting a stick or whip, which he was never afraid to use on the person. A blow dealt, however, might be regretted later and the victim of his brusque behavior eventually compensated in some way. He was never afraid of stripping down and throwing himself into some hard, sometimes dirty, work, whether it be feeding hordes of the poor in the midday sun or treating camels with tar. He is portrayed as absolutely scrupulous in all his dealings with money. Wealth set aside by the community for the public good was inviolate; he was often personally short of money. Gifts, however insignificant, taken from campaign booty with the approval of the troops on the front and delivered to him in Medina brought only an angry response, sometimes a box round the ears, as the messenger was sent away to return the gift to its rightful place with the rest of the spoils. He could be extremely kind and compassionate and the anecdote of the woman and her starving children, which is given below, is famed as an example of 'Umar's pity toward those suffering great hardship.

The Texts Used and Parallel Texts

The texts used in this translation are those of Leiden and Cairo (see Bibliography). This section of the text in the First Series of the Leiden edition was edited by E. Prym. Muḥammad Abū al-Faḍl Ibrāhīm’s Cairo text in fact adds little or nothing to Prym’s editorial effort, though on occasions it is preferred for the purposes of translation. The Egyptian scholar’s punctuation often helps the process of interpretation, though again sometimes it is misleading. Serious problems clearly remain in both editions, although all one’s sympathies are fully on the side of Prym, and his editorial endeavors deserve nothing but praise.
Such problematic passages are quoted here in transliteration in footnotes, at times at some length.

The only truly parallel text—and then it does not cover all the ground of the *Taʾrīkh* by any means—is Ibn al-Athīr's *Kāmil*, which is, however, a slavish, verbatim copy of Ṭabarī. It is therefore of very limited use, but I have nevertheless kept the reader informed of the parallel text in the footnotes. Yaʿqūbī's *Ṭaʾrīkh* is extremely thin at this early period, although I have where necessary referred to it in the footnotes. Balʿamī's so-called abridgment of Ṭabarī's text in Persian I have found useful; from time to time it is extremely so, not only clarifying, but even adding to, the Arabic text. Baladhūrī's *Futūḥ* has proved invaluable. It is an excellent check on facts and figures, although it frequently presents an entirely different view of a particular conquest. The *ʿIqd* of Ibn ʿAbd Rabbih, who was a contemporary of Ṭabarī, quotes the latter's account of the electoral council almost verbatim. References to it have been given in the footnotes, particularly where they help with the interpretation of the text.

*The Translation*

Two problems in connection with the translation of the text have been dealt with in a manner that requires clarification. The first is the constant use in the original of pronouns—sometimes referring to nouns distant from them, sometimes referring to no noun at all! In this I have followed what seems to be the sensible method of the translator of Volume XV of this series (see his Translation and Editorial Conventions p. xxi). I use parentheses ( ) to surround the noun to which the pronoun refers where merely to use a pronoun in English would be to create ambiguity, possibility even incomprehension. I have also used brackets [ ] to surround any additions supplied for the purpose of a clearer and smoother understanding of the text.

The second problem arises because of the total nonexistence in Arabic of reported or indirect speech. All conversations in the original are in direct speech and always introduced by nothing more precise than *he said/she said/they said*. Where it seems to me important to retain the original direct speech, I have done so.
Where, however, the constant direct speech appears ridiculous, I have not hesitated to convert it to indirect speech. In either case I have also not hesitated to use a little imagination and to introduce verbs like reply, retort, exclaim, instead of the ubiquitous said.

Footnotes and Bibliography
I have made every endeavor to identify all personal, place, and tribal names found in the text. As for the first, there is a great problem in particular with the narrators whose names appear by the dozens. In this case I have consulted the standard biographical dictionaries. Where persons remain unidentified, I have indicated this clearly in my footnotes. Thanks to the excellent geographical coverage of the eastern part of the Islamic empire by Yaqūt and other geographers and to such studies as Le Strange’s Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, among others, place names have not been difficult. Reference works on tribes, too, are on the whole adequate. I have also used the footnotes to add explanations where it seems to me that the text requires them, particularly for the non-Arabist and to quote the original Arabic in transliteration in the cases of problematic and corrupt passages. The bibliography lists those works quoted in the footnotes, with in addition one or two other works that I have found particularly valuable during my work on this translation.

Acknowledgments
There remains the pleasant task of acknowledging the kind assistance of Professors C. E. Bosworth and J. Derek Latham. Both gave extremely generously of their time and effort to read through the manuscript of this volume; both made numerous suggestions for the improvement of the text and the notes. I am enormously grateful to them both. Successive postgraduate seminars in Durham and Manchester have benefited me greatly, and I must finally mention Mushallaḥ al-Murayḥī with particular thanks.

G. Rex Smith
Map I. The Area of the Conquests of Iran, 212-23/641-44
In this year 'Umar [b. al-Khaṭṭāb] gave the armies of Iraq the command to seek out those of Persia, wherever they might be. He commanded some of those Muslim troops who were in al-Baṣrah and its surrounding areas to march on the region of Fārs, Kirmān, and Iṣfahān and some of those who were in the district and regions of al-Kūfah [to march] on Iṣfahān, Azerbaijan, and al-Rayy. Some said that 'Umar did this in the year 18 [January 12, 639–January 2, 640]. This is [also] the version of Sayf b. 'Umar.3

1. Fārs here in the text refers broadly to the land of Persia, not specifically the province of that name, indeed including the provinces of Fārs, Kirmān, Iṣfahān, Azerbaijan, and al-Rayy, listed below. The text of this volume thus begins with this general command on the part of the caliph, 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, to his forces in Iraq to move eastward and begin the conquest of Iran.

2. For the Persian word māh, see Le Strange, _Lands_, 190; Barthold, _Geography_, 208.

3. Sayf b. 'Umar (d. ca. 180/796) appears as the major source for Ṭabarī's account of the conquest of Iran; see Translation, XIII, xiii–xviii; XV, xvi–xvii. See also Hinds, "Sources," 3–16, with an assessment on p. 12; Hinds also discusses Sayf in the context of the conquest of the province of Fārs in "Con-
The Conquest of Iran

What Happened in This Year, 21 — 'Umar’s Previously Mentioned Orders to the Two Armies

According to al-Sari—Shu’ayb—Sayf—Muhammad, Ṭalḥah, al-Muhallab, ‘Amr, and Sa’id:4 When ‘Umar realized that Yazdajird5 was making war on him every year and when it was suggested to him that he would continue to do this until he was driven out of his kingdom, ['Umar] gave the army permission to penetrate into Persia to wrest from Yazdajird his imperial possessions. He therefore dispatched the commanders of the Basran and Kufan armies after the victory of Nihâwand.6 Between the appointment of Sa’d b. Abi Waqqâṣ7 [as commander of al-Kūfah] and that of 'Ammār b. Yāsir,8 there were two [other]
The Events of the Year 21

commanders, 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Itbān,9 in whose time the battle of Nihāwand took place, and Ziyād b. Ḥanẓalah, confederate of B. 'Abd b. Qusayy,10 in whose time the order to penetrate was given. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh was removed and sent elsewhere. Ziyād b. Ḥanẓalah, an emigrant, was appointed. But he served for [only] a short time, persistently asking to be relieved. So he was relieved of his post, and 'Ammār b. Yāsir appointed after him. ('Umar) reinforced the army of al-Baṣrah with 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh and that of al-Kūfah with Abū Mūsā [al-As̲h̲'ārī],11 appointing 'Umar b. Surāqah12 in his place. Standards came from 'Umar to certain individuals in al-Kūfah during the time of Ziyād b. Ḥanẓalah.13 One of [these standards] came to Nu'aym b. Muqarrin.14 The people of Hamadhān15 had reneged [on their] peace [agreement], so ('Umar) ordered (Nu'aym) to march on Hamadhān, saying, "[If God gives you victory,] [go] on beyond, onward to Khurāsān!" ('Umar) also dispatched 'Utbah b. Farqād16 and Bukayr b. 'Abdallāh,17 confirming them in charge of Azerbaijan. He divided (the country)

9. Companion and military commander. See Translation, XIII, 80, 88–89, and passim; also Zarrinkūb, "Conquest," 21, erroneously 'Atabān; Donner, Conquests, 436; Ibn Ḥajar, Isḥāb, VI, 145.
10. For Ziyād, a prominent commander and administrator, see Ibn Ḥajar, Isḥāb, IV, 28; Ibn al-Athīr, Usd, II, 213; Donner, Conquests, 365 (at Yarmūk). B. 'Abd b. Qusayy is a tribal division [jāmph] of Kilāb b. Murrah. See Zubayri, Quraysh, 236; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 14; Kaḥḥālah, Mu'jam, II, 726; Caskel, Gamharat, I, Table 4.
12. That is, over al-Baṣrah. See Ibn Ḥajar, Isḥāb, VIII, 26, and Ibn al-Athīr, Usd, IV, 79, both giving little information on this military commander.
13. The dispatch of standards from the caliph to Muslim commanders in the field marked the beginning of a general mobilization eastward of their armies.
14. Nu'aym was, with al-Nu'mān and Suwayd, one of the famous Ibn Muqarrin brothers and heroes of the eastern campaigns. See Ibn Ḥajar, Isḥāb, X, 178. See also note 26, below.
15. A famous town in the Jībah, northeast of Baghdad and southwest of al-Rayy, about equidistant from both. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, V, 410–17; Le Strange, Lands, 194–95.
16. Al-Sulami, Companion, military commander, and kharjī official. He was the conqueror of Mosul in 18/639. Cf. Translation, XIII, 60.
17. Al-Laythī, first mentioned in the text in the account of the year 14/635–636, when he was appointed military commander. See Tabārī, I, 2232. Cf. also Translation, XIII, 4–5.
between them, ordering one of them to take [troops] there from Ḥulwān to [form] the right section [of the army] and the other to take [troops] from Mosul to [form] the left. Thus one was on the right of his colleague and the other on his colleague's left. ('Umar) sent a standard to 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh, ordering him to march on ʿIsfahān. Now he was courageous, a hero of the noble Companions and a prominent Helper, confederate of Banū al-Ḥuablā of Banū Asad. ('Umar) reinforced him with Abū Mūsā from al-Baṣrah and appointed 'Umar b. Surāqah commander of al-Baṣrah.

The account concerning 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh is that, when 'Umar heard of the victory at Nihāwand, he determined to give permission [to his armies] to penetrate [further eastward]. He therefore wrote to ('Abdallāh), giving him instructions to march out of al-Kūfah and halt in al-Madā' in, he should call on [the Muslim commanders to volunteer], not select them, and write to him [to inform him that all] this [had been carried out]. 'Umar was intending to despatch him to ʿIsfahān. Among those who answered his call [to volunteer] were 'Abdallāh b. Warqā' al-Riyāḥī and 'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥārith b. Warqā' al-Asadi. Those who do not know think one of them was 'Abdallāh b. Budayl b. Warqā' al-Khuzāʾi because of mention of [the name] Warqā'. They were under the [mistaken] impression that [Warqā'] was ('Abdallāh al-Riyāḥī's) grandfather. But when he was killed at Ṣiffin 'Abdallāh b. Budayl b. Warqā' was twenty-four years old and in 'Umar's time he was a young lad.
When 'Umar heard of 'Abdallah's departure, he sent Ziyād b. Ḥanẓalah [to al-Kūfah]. When he heard of the departure and [continuing] penetration of the troops, he appointed 'Ammār commander, reciting God's words, "And We want to show favor to those who were considered weak on earth, to make them leaders and to make them heirs." Ziyād had been sent in the middle of Sa'd's period as commander to the office of judge of al-Kūfah after Salmān and 'Abd al-Rahmān, the sons of Rabi'ah, had been relieved [of the post], to act as judge until 'Abdallah b. Mas'ūd arrived from Ḥimṣ. Al-Nu'mān and Suwayd, the sons of Muqarrin, had been put in charge on behalf of 'Umar of [the lands] watered by the Euphrates and Tigris, but they asked to be relieved, saying, "Relieve us of a position that is changing and becoming attractive to us like a prostitute!" So he relieved them of their posts, appointing in their places Ḥudhayfah b. Asid al-Chifārī and Jābir b. 'Amr al-Muzānī. Then they [too] asked to be relieved, so he relieved them, appointing in their places Ḥudhayfah b. al-Yamān and

However, Ṭabari himself erroneously mentions Ibn Budayl in connection with the conquest of Kirmān (Ṭabari, I, 2704), see also note 328, below. In 23, when Kirmān was taken by the Muslims, Ibn Budayl would have been only ten years old! Ibn Budayl played a prominent part at the battle of Ṣiffin in 37/657–658 on the side of 'Ali, see Ṭabari, I, 3292ff.

23. Qur'ān 28:5. See p. 47, the dismissal of 'Ammār.

24. For Salmān, see Ibn Sa'd, Ṭabaqāt, VI, 34; Ibn Ḥajar, Isābah, IV, 220–21. For 'Abd al-Rahmān, see Ibn Ḥajar, Isābah, VI, 278–79. See also Donner, Conquests, 395–96.

25. Ibn Mas'ūd was a Qur'ān reader who died in 42/662–663, see Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VI, 271ff.; see also Translation, I, 206 n. 280.

26. For the administrative and military activities of the two brothers, see Translation, XIII, passim. Al-Nu'mān has an entry in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, X, 456–57, and is mentioned by Abū Yūsuf; see Ben Shemesh, Taxation, III, 96. For Suwayd, see Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IV, 279–80. This passage would seem to indicate that they were charged with land survey duties in the areas described; see Ṭabari, I, 2456, and Translation, XIII, 36, where the land-survey aspect of the appointment is clearer. Cf. also Morony, Iraq, 69, 130, 137.

27. This would appear to mean that their official position proved too much of a temptation for them! For the Arabic mūnisah, see Bosworth, Underworld, I, 10.


29. Jābir is mentioned in Ibn Sa'd, Ṭabaqāt, VII, 256, though with no further details.
'Uthmān b. Ḥunayf, 'Ḥudhayfah over [the lands] watered by the Tigris and beyond and 'Uthmān over all [the lands] watered by the Euphrates belonging to the Sawād [of al-Kūfah and of al-ṣaṣrah] together.31 ['Umar] wrote to the troops of al-Kūfah, informing them] that he had sent 'Ammār b. Yāsir to them as commander and appointed 'Abdallāh b. Mas'ūd as teacher and administrative assistant.32 [He also informed them] that he had appointed Ḥudhayfah b. al-Yamān in charge of [the lands] watered by the Tigris and beyond, whereas he had appointed 'Uthmān b. Ḥunayf in charge of [the lands] watered by the Euphrates.

Iṣfahān

['Ammār arrived as commander in al-Kūfah and 'Umar's letter reached 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh with the order] to march on Iṣfahān, leaving Ziyād in charge of al-Kūfah. 'Abdallāh b. Warqā' al-Riyāhī was to be over his vanguard and 'Abdallāh b. Warqā' al-Asadi and 'Īsmaiḥ b. 'Abdallāh—that is 'Īsmaiḥ b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydah b. Sayf b. 'Abd b. al-Ḥārith34—over his two wings. 'Abdallāh marched at the head of the army and came to Ḥudhayfah [b. al-Yamān], who returned to his post. 'Abdallāh left Nihāwand at the head of his followers and those of the army of al-Numān who had departed with him to face [another] army that had assembled against him, [comprising] some of the in-

30. Both renowned for their work in land survey and khardj assessment; see Zarrinkūb, “Conquest,” 20; Morony, Iraq, 109, 108, 121; Ben Shemesh, Taxation, 80, 87, 93, 97, 100, 103.
31. For the general meaning of al-Sawād, see Le Strange, Lands, 14. I have here translated the dual of the Leiden and Cairo texts. The variant reading, al-Sawād, in the singular, however, should be noted, and Abū Yusuf, when referring to the appointments of Ḥudhayfah and 'Uthmān, also uses the singular, presumably the Sawād of al-Kūfah. See Ben Shemesh, Taxation, 80, 87, Morony, Iraq, 121. Perhaps the following mention that 'Umar wrote only to the Kufans about his appointments also points to the Sawād of al-Kūfah alone being meant here.
32. In this early period, this seems the most appropriate rendering of wazīr, see Morony, Iraq, 536.
33. For the conquest of Iṣfahān, see Balādhuri, Futūḥ, 312–14; Ibn al-Athir, Kāmil, III, 9; Bal'ami, Chronique, III, 480ff. Cf. Donner, Conquests, Appendix N.
34. Ibn Ṭarīf, an early military commander under Khālid b. al-Walid in Syria, later in the east. See Ibn Ḥajar, Iṣābah, VII, 8.
habitants of Iṣfahān, led by the district governor.\textsuperscript{35} In charge of his vanguard was Shahrbarāz Jādhwāy,\textsuperscript{36} an important leader (shaykh) at the head of a large force. The Muslims and the vanguard of the polytheists met in one of the districts\textsuperscript{37} of Iṣfahān, and they fought a hard battle. The leader called for single combat, so 'Abdallāh b. Warga' came out against him and killed him. The army of Iṣfahān fled. The Muslims named this district Rustāq al-Shaykh, and this is its name to this day. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh called out, "Who's next?!" so the district governor sued for peace, which ('Abdallāh) granted them. This was the first district of Iṣfahān to be taken.

Then 'Abdallāh marched out from Rustāq al-Shaykh in the direction of Jayy and finally arrived there.\textsuperscript{38} The ruler in Iṣfahān was at that time al-Fādhusafān.\textsuperscript{39} ['Abdallāh] settled the army around Jayy. He besieged them, but after a period collecting together a huge army, they came out against him. When they met, al-Fādhusafān said to 'Abdallāh: "Do not kill my men, and I shall not kill yours. Rather come out against me in single combat. If I kill you, your men will withdraw. If you kill me, my men will make peace with you, but only if no arrow falls on them."\textsuperscript{40} So 'Abdallāh came out against him in single combat, saying, "Will you make the [first] attack on me, or shall I on you?" He replied that he would attack. So 'Abdallāh stood still before him, and al-Fādhusafān made an attack on him, thrusting at him and hitting the pommel of his saddle and breaking it. He also cut through the breast girth and the girth and the saddle

\textsuperscript{35} Ustandār in the text; see CHIr, 218; Morony, Iraq, 536, suggests Sasanian official in charge of royal property or a crown prince. The first interpretation, however, seems most appropriate to the context. Chronique, III, 483, says that the town was governed by a Persian called Pādouaspān. Cf. EI², s.v. "Bādūspānīda" (Nikitine).

\textsuperscript{36} Cf. Justi Namenbuch, 278, where there is brief mention of this Persian general.

\textsuperscript{37} For the Persian word rustāq, see Steingass, Dictionary, 575; Morony, Iraq, 534.

\textsuperscript{38} Jayy is the name of one of the two towns making up Iṣfahān; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, II, 202–31; Le Strange, Lands, 203–4, 206.

\textsuperscript{39} Cf. Noldeke, Geschichte, 251 n. 2. Cf. also note 35, above.

\textsuperscript{40} Arabic: wa-'in qatalta-ni sālama-ka aṣḥābī wa-'in kāna aṣḥābī lā yaqa'ū la-hum nushshābah.
cloth, and the saddle came away, with 'Abdallâh still on the horse. But he came off, though he was still standing, then regained a firm seat on the horse, riding bareback. ('Abdallâh) told him to stand still, but (al-Fâdhúsafân) agreed with him not to fight [further]. He said: "I do not want to fight you [further], for I see you are a perfect man. Rather I shall come back with you to your camp and make peace with you. I shall hand over the town to you, allowing anyone who wishes to stay, but [he must] pay tribute, keeping his property, and on condition that you grant anyone whose land you have taken by force equal status with them and they return [to their property]. Anyone who refuses to enter into the same [agreement] as we will go where he wishes, and his land will be yours." ('Abdallâh) replied that he accepted his terms.

Abû Mûsâ al-Ash'ârî arrived [to join] 'Abdallâh from the area of al-Ahwâz when al-Fâdhúsafân had already made peace with the latter. All the troops left Jayy and entered into the contact except for thirty Išfâhânis who opposed [the majority of] their people. They assembled and made off for Kirmân, along with their dependents, [to join] a group already there. 'Abdallâh and Abû Mûsâ entered Jayy, the town of Išfâhân, and [the former] wrote to 'Umar to this effect. Those who remained rejoiced, whereas those who left regretted [their decision]. 'Umar's reply to 'Abdallâh commanded him to march and join up with Suhayl b. 'Adi to fight with him those in Kirmân. He was also to leave behind in Jayy those who would defend the town. He was to appoint as his deputy over Išfâhân al-Sâ'îb b. al-Aqra'.

According to al-Sari—Shu'âyb—Sayf—a group of al-Hasan's informants, who included al-Mubârak b. Faḍâlah—al-Hasan—

---

42. Al-Azdi. See the brief entry in Ibn Ḥajar, Isâbah, IV, 286.
44. Al-Hasan is the famous al-Hasan al-BAšrî [b. 22/641] [Tabari, I, 2646], d. ca. 110/728]. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, II, 263–70; El², s.v. [Ritter]; Sezgin, GAS, I, 591–94. For al-Mubârak [d. ca. 164/780], see Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, X, 28–31; Translation, I, 268 n. 641.
Asid b. al-Mutashammis, the nephew of al-Aḥnaf: Asid b. al-Mutashammis, the nephew of al-Aḥnaf: 

I was with Abū Mūsā at the conquest of Iṣfahān, but he was there only in a supporting role.

According to al-Saʿrī—Shuʿayb—Sayf—Muḥammad, Ṭalḥah, al-Muhallab, ʿAmr, and Saʿīd: the Iṣfahān peace document:

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful; a document from 'Abdallāh to al-Fāḍīhūsafān and to the people of Iṣfahān and the surrounding areas. You will remain in a state of security as long as you pay the tribute. This is imposed upon you annually at a rate within your capacity [to pay]. You will pay it for everyone who has attained puberty to whoever is governor of your region. The Muslim must be guided, be afforded safe passage; he must be given hospitality for a whole day and a night and given a mount, if he is on foot, up to a distance of one stage. You are not to put [anyone] in authority over a Muslim. The Muslims must have your good counsel and be paid what you are obliged [to pay]. You will have safe-conduct as long as you carry out [all these stipulations]. If you go against [this] in any way or if anyone of you goes against it and you do not hand him over, you will have no safe-conduct. Anyone abusing a Muslim will be dealt with severely. If anyone physically abuses him, we shall kill him.

He wrote [this document] and it was witnessed by 'Abdallāh b. Qays [al-Aṣḥāthi], 'Abdallāh b. Warqā, and Iṣmah b. 'Abdallāh. When ʿUmar's letter reached 'Abdallāh, in which he was ordered to join up with Suhayl b. ʿAdī in Kirmān, he left at the head of a detachment of cavalry. He appointed al-Sāʾīb as his deputy and joined up with Suhayl before he arrived in Kirmān.

According to Maʿqīl b. Yasār, it was al-Nuʿmān b. Muqarrin who was in command of the Muslim army when it attacked Iṣfahān.

---

45. I find no information on Asid. Al-Aḥnaf is al-Aḥnaf b. Qays al-Tamīmī, the leader of Tamīm in al-Baṣrah. See EI², s.v. "Al-Aḥnaf b. Qays" [Pellat].
46. Al-Muzani [d. 60–70/679–689]; see Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, X, 235.
The Conquest of Iran

The Account of [the Attack on Iṣfahān]

According to Yaʿqūb b. Ibrāhīm[47] and 'Amr b. 'Alī[48]—'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Mahdi[49]—Ḥāmmād b. Salamah[50]—Abū 'Imrān al-Jawnī[51]—'Alqamah b. 'Abdallāh al-Muzānī[52]—Maʿqil b. Yasār [al-Muzānī]: 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb consulted al-Hurmuzan,[53] asking him what he thought should be begin with Fārs, Azerbaijan, or Iṣfahān? He replied: "Fārs and Azerbaijan are the wings; Iṣfahān is the head. If you cut off one of the wings, the other one [can still] work. But, if you cut off the head, the wings collapse. Begin with the head!" 'Umar went into the mosque while al-Nuʿman b. Muqarrin was praying and sat down beside him. When he had finished his prayers, ['Umar] told him that he had a job for him to do. [Al-Nuʿmān] replied that, if it was collecting taxes, he was unwilling, but, if it was a military task, [he was willing]. ['Umar] told him that he would be engaged in a military matter. He despatched him to Iṣfahān and wrote to the people of al-Kūfah to give him reinforcements. He arrived in Iṣfahān, but there was the river between him and [the enemy]. So [al-Nuʿmān] sent al-Mughirah b. Shuʿbah[54] to them, and he reached them. Their ruler, called Dhu al-Ḥajibayn,[55] was told that the envoy of the Arabs was at the door. So he took counsel

---

47. Al-Jūzajānī [d. ca. 256/870], see Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, I, 181–83; Rosenthal, Historiography, 278; Translation, I, 26, note 96.
49. Died 198/814. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VI, 279–81; Translation, I, 201 n. 252.
51. An unidentified narrator.
52. 'Alqamah died in 100/718. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VII, 275.
53. Ruler of Khūzistān, who, after leading much opposition against the Muslim forces, surrendered to 'Umar earlier in 21/641. Only later did he become a Muslim. See Zarrinkūb, "Conquest," 14–15. See also Masūdī, Murūj, IV, 230ff., recounting the same anecdotes on the authority of 'Alqamah and Maʾqil. Cf. also Balʿamī, Chronique, III, 481.
54. A veteran Muslim administrator and commander and a Thaqafī [d. 50/670]. See Shaban, History, 58, 84, 187; Zarrinkūb, "Conquest," 19, 21; Translation, XIII, passim.
55. "He of the two eyebrows." See Balʿamī, Chronique, III, 468; Nöldke, Geschichte, 226 n. 1. On such names, see Goldziher, "Über Dualtitel"; see also Translation, XIII, 180 n. 618.
with his advisers, saying: "What do you think? Shall I sit down to [receive] him in royal splendor?" They replied that he should. So he sat on his throne and put the crown on his head, while the royal princes sat in two ranks, wearing earrings, gold bracelets, and silk-brocade garments. Then [the ruler] allowed [al-Mughirah] to enter, carrying his lance and shield. He began to poke at their carpets with his lance to unnerve them. Two men took him by the arms, and he stood before their ruler, who spoke to him, saying: "You Arabs, vehement hunger has afflicted you, so you have left [your homelands]. If you wish, we shall give you provisions, and you can return home." Al-Mughirah spoke, praising and extolling God; then he said: "We Arabs used to eat corpses and carrion; people used to trample us under foot, not we them. God has sent forth from us a prophet, the best of us in rank, the most truthful in what he says." (And he mentioned the Prophet in the fashion he deserves.) "He made us promises that we discovered were [fulfilled] as he had said. He promised us that we would conquer you and take possession of everything here. I see you are wearing (fine) garb and apparel. I do not think that [the Muslim army] coming after me will go away until they seize them." (Al-Mughirah) continued: "Then I wondered what if I were to collect up my garments, leap up in one bound, and sit with this huge infidel on his throne! Perhaps [then] he would be unnerved." He continued: "I waited for a time when he was not expecting it and jumped. There I was with him on his throne!" (The account) continues: They seized him, beating him repeatedly with their hands and trampling him under foot. (Al-Mughirah) continued: I said, "Is this how you treat envoys? We do not act thus. We do not do this with your envoys." The ruler replied, "If you wish, you can cross over to us or we over to you [to fight]." (Al-Mughirah) said that they would cross over to [the army of Isfahan]. He continued: "So

56. Li-yataţayyaru, literally, "so that they might augur evil."

57. An indication that the audience was over and battle would ensue. A similar story involving al-Mughirah has already appeared in the text in the context of the events leading up to the battle of Nihāwand (Tabari, 1, 2601–3). If it is a genuine account in either case, we learn much here and in the anecdote recounted below [about his appointment] of al-Mughirah, who had clearly failed miserably in his diplomatic mission! He was later appointed governor of al-Kūfah [see p. 4] and remained in office until 'Umar's murder.
we crossed over against them. They formed themselves into a chains of men, ten in one chain, or five, or three. We drew ourselves out in rank to meet them, and they shot arrows at us, finally rushing in among us.” Al-Mughirah said to al-Nu'mān, “God have mercy upon you, they have rushed in among our men; attack!” But he replied: “You are indeed a man of fine qualities. But I was with the Messenger of God when he went into battle. If he did not fight early on in the day, he would postpone the battle until the sun went down, the winds blew, and victory descended!” Then (al-Nu'mān) said, “I shall wave my standard three times: At the first wave everyone will relieve himself and perform his ablutions; at the second everyone will inspect his weapon and his sandal thong and fasten it tight; at the third attack, with no one turning aside to another. If al-Nu'mān is killed, let no one turn aside to him. I am going to make a single prayer to God. I conjure every one of you to say amen after it: ‘O God! Give martyrdom this day to al-Nu'mān in the aid of the Muslims! Grant him victory over (the army of Iṣfahān).’” He waved his standard once, then a second, then a third time. Then he put on his coat of mail and attacked. He was the first man to be struck down.

Ma'qil said:58 I came over to him and, remembering his conjuring [us all to say amen after his prayer], put a marker over him, then went away. Now [usually] when we kill a man his followers are distracted away from us [to investigate him]. Dhū al-Hājibayn fell from his mule, his belly split open, so God put (the Isfahāni army) to flight. Then I came (back] to al-Nu'mān, bringing with me a skin containing water. I washed the dust from his face, and he said, “Who are you?” I replied I was Ma'qil b. Yasar. He asked how the army had done. I replied that God had given them victory. He said: “Praise be to God! Write to 'Umar about this.” And his soul departed. The [Muslim] army, including Ibn 'Umar,59 Ibn al-Zubayr,60 Ṭāhir b. Ma'di Karib61

---

58. See Ibn al-Athir, Kāmil, III, 9, on the same authority.
59. This must be ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, who had been sent from Medina to join al-Nu’mān’s army prior to the battle of Nihāwand; see Tabari, I, 2597, 2601, 2618.
60. 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr, the famous anticaliph (d. 73/692), see EI², s.v. [Pellat).
61. Al-Zubayri (d. 16/637 or 21/641), cf. EI², s.v. [Pellat).
The Events of the Year 21

and Ḥudhayfah, rallied to al-Ash'ath b. Qays. 62 They sent for [al-Nu'man's] concubine 63 and asked her what testament he had left with her. She replied, "Here is a casket containing a document." They took it, and in it was [the following]: If al-Nu'man is killed, so-and-so [will take over]; if so-and-so is killed, so-and-so [will take over].

Al-Wāqidi 64 said that Khālid b. al-Walid died during this year—that is 21—in Ḥims. He exhorted his followers to continue their support for 'Umar b. al-Khattab. 65

[Al-Wāqidi] also reported: In [this year] 'Abdallāh and 'Abd al-Rahmān, the sons of 'Amr, and Abū Sirwa'ah made a military expedition and arrived in Egypt. 'Abd al-Rahmān and Abū Sirwa'ah drank wine, and something happened to them! 66

[Al-Wāqidi] also reported: In [this year] 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ marched on Antābulus, which is Barqah. He conquered it and made peace with its inhabitants on [payment] of 13,000 dinars and [on condition] that they sell off what they wanted of their sons as part of their tribute. 67

---

62. Famous shaykh of Kindah who settled in al-Kūfah and died in 40/661. See Morony, Iraq, p. 93; Donner, Conquests, 433–34; Mad'aj, Yemen, 12. 13, 45–51, and passim, EI2, s.v. (Reckendorf).

63. Arabic: umm walad, strictly speaking a concubine who has given birth to a child by her master, see Translation, XIII, 58.


65. Khālid b. al-Walid was a famous early Islamic general, see EI2, s.v. (Crone). This would appear to be the meaning here of awṣā ilā. See in particular Kazimirski, Dictionnaire, II, 1551.

66. These are perhaps the sons of 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ. Abū Sirwa'ah is perhaps Abū Sirwa'ah 'Uqbah b. al-Ḥarīth b. 'Amir b. Nawfal b. 'Abd Manāf, see Ibn Ḥajar, Taḥdhib, VII, 138–39, XII, 105; Translation, XII, 105; Ḥāfīzůnī, Aghānī, IV, 42. There appears to be no record of what exactly happened to the offending pair.

67. Also Baladhuri, Futūḥ, 224, and Ya'qūbī, Tārikh, II, 156; and Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam, Futūḥ, 170, with the rather strange suggestion that sons were sold, presumably for the purpose of providing military service to the Muslims, as part of a tribute arrangement. Barqah is ancient Barce in present day Libya; Baladhuri, Futūḥ, 224–23; Ya'qūt, Mu'jam, I, 388; Abun-Nasr, Maghrib, 315, map. It is spelled Barqā in Wāqidi, Futūḥ, 102. Whereas Baladhuri, ibid. calls Barqah the town of Antābulus, Ya'qūt, ibid., says the town of Barqah is Antābulus.
(Al-Wāqidi) also reported: In (this year) 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb appointed 'Ammār b. Yāsir governor of al-Kūfah, Ibn Mas‘ūd treasurer, and 'Uthmān b. Hunayf in charge of land survey.68 But the inhabitants of al-Kūfah complained about 'Ammār, and he asked 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb to be relieved. [The latter] approached Jubayr b. Muṭ‘im69 in confidence and appointed him governor of al-Kūfah, telling him not to mention it to anyone. But al-Mughirah b. Shu‘bah heard that 'Umar had held a private meeting with Jubayr b. Muṭ‘im, returned to his wife, and told her to go to the wife of Jubayr b. Muṭ‘im and offer her some food [prepared especially] for a journey. She came to her and offered her [the food], but she remained silent [at first], then said, "Yes, give me it." When al-Mughirah had verified all this, he came to 'Umar and said, "God bless you in the one whom you have appointed governor." "What governor have I appointed?" asked 'Umar. So he mentioned that he had appointed Jubayr b. Muṭ‘im. 'Umar said, "I do not know what to do!" He [in fact] appointed al-Mughirah b. Shu‘bah governor of al-Kūfah, an office in which he remained until 'Umar died.70

(Al-Wāqidi) also said: In (this year) 'Amr b. al-‘Āṣ sent 'Uqbah b. Nāfī al-Fihri,71 and he acquired Zawilah by treaty, the whole area between Barqah and Zawilah being already pacified in Muslim control.72

68. See EI², s.v. "Misāḥa" (Bosworth and Pellat).
69. A leader of Quraysh and a genealogist, although appearing in the text mainly as an early narrator, see Ibn Hajar, Tahdhib, II, 63–64. Cf. a slightly different, and more informative, version of the story that follows in Bal‘ami, Chronique, III, 485–86. See also Ibn Sa‘d, Ṭabaqāt, VIII, 59.
70. This anecdote, which represents 'Umar as somewhat weak and indecisive and al-Mughirah as ambitious and cunning, is also recounted in Ibn al-‘Athir, Kāmil, III, 10.
72. Baladhuri, Futūḥ, 224, confirms that 'Uqbah took control of the Maghrib and reached Zawilah. See also Ya‘qūbī, Tārīkh, II, 156, who reports the dispatch of 'Uqbah to Nubia. Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, III, 159–60, says that Zawilah was between Bilād al-Sūdān and Ifriqiyyah and also confirms that 'Uqbah took it after the conquest of Barqah. Cf. Hill, Termination, 56, erroneously Zāwilah.
According to Ibn Ḥumayd⁷³—Salamah⁷⁴—Ibn Iṣḥāq:⁷⁵ There took place in Syria in the year 21 (December 10, 641—November 30, 642) the campaign of the commander, Muʿāwiya b. ʿAbi Sufyān,⁷⁶ while ʿUmayr b. Sād al-Anṣārī⁷⁷ was in charge of Damascus, al-Bathaniyyah,⁷⁸ Ḥawrān, Ḥims, Qinnasrīn,⁷⁹ and al-Jazirah and Muʿāwiya in charge of al-Balqā',⁸⁰ the Jordan, Palestine, the coastal regions (al-Sawāḥil), Antioch, Maʿarrat Maṣrīn,⁸¹ and Cilicia. At this point Abū Hāshim b. ʿUtbah b. Rabiʿah b. ʿĀbd Shams⁸² made a peace treaty covering Cilicia, Antioch, and Maʿarrat Maṣrīn.

It was said that in (this year) both al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī and ʿĀmir al-Shaʿbī were born.⁸³

Al-Wāqīdī said: ʿUmar b. al-Khaṭṭāb led the pilgrimage this year, leaving Zayd b. Thābit⁸⁴ as his deputy over Medina. His governors of Mecca, al-Ṭāʾīf, the Yemen, al-Yamāmah, Bahrain, Syria, Egypt, and al-Baṣrāh were the same as those in the year 20
[December 21, 640—December 10, 641. The governor of al-Kūfah was 'Ammār b. Yāsir, who was also in charge of the police. 'Abdallāh b. Mas'ūd was in charge of the treasury, 'Uthmān b. Ḥunayf of the land tax, and Shurayḥ reportedly held the office of judge.

85. It is in fact necessary to go back to the end of the year 17 (638–39) to find the complete list. Cf. Ţabari, I, 2570; Translation, XIII, 150.
86. For this meaning of aḥḍāth, see Dozy, Supplément, I, 258, with expressions from Baladhuri. See also Hinds, "Conquests," 50 n. 33; El², s.v. (Cahen).
The Events of the Year

22

(November 30, 642—November 19, 643)

Abū Ja’far [al-Ṭabarānī] said: In [this year] Azerbaijan was conquered, according to Aḥmad b. Thābit al-Rāzī—someone he mentioned—Ishāq b. ‘Isā—Abū Ma’shar.88 Azerbaijan was [conquered] in the year 22, its commander being al-Mughirah b. Shu‘bah. Al-Wāqīḍi also reported thus.

However, Sayf b. ‘Umar said, according to al-Sarī—Shu‘ayb: The conquest of Azerbaijan took place in the year 18 of the Hijrah after the conquest of Hamadhān, al-Rayy, and Jurjān and after the ruler of Ṭabaristān89 had sued for peace with the Muslims. He continued: All this took place in the year 18.90

88. For Aḥmad and Abū Ma’shar, see Sezgin, GAS, I, 192, 796; Translation, I, 6, for Ishāq [d. 214/829], see GAS, 200 n. 145.
89. Yaḥyā, Mu‘jam, IV, 14–15, explains that isbahbād, the term used here, is that used in Ṭabaristān as the title of the ruler. See also Morony, Iraq, 28.
90. On the question of the date of the conquest of Azerbaijan, see Baladhurī, Futūḥ, 326; also Ya‘qūbī, Tārīkh, 156, who gives only the date 22; Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, III, 13, under the year 22. For the conquest of Hamadhān, see Baladhurī, Futūḥ, 309–11 [in the year 23]; Ya‘qūbī, Tārīkh, II, 157 [also in 23]; Ibn al-Athīr, ibid., 10, sub annō 22.
(Sayf) continued: The reason for the conquest of Hamadhan, so it was claimed, was [as follows]. Muḥammad, al-Muhallab, Ṭalḥah, 'Amr, and Saʿid had informed (Sayf) that al-Nuʿmān was diverted to the two provincial centers [of Nihāwand and al-Dinawar] because the Persians had assembled in Nihāwand. The Kūfans were diverted there too, and they, including Ḥudhayfah, joined up with [al-Nuʿmān]. When the Kūfans left Ḥulwān and arrived at Māḥ, they attacked a castle (qalʿah) in a field (marj) in which was a body of armed men. They forced them to come down—and this was the first [step] in the conquest—and settled cavalry in their place to keep a hold on the castle. They named their camp after the field, calling it Marj al-Qalʿah. Then they marched from Marj al-Qalʿah in the direction of Nihāwand and reached another castle containing some men. They left al-Nusayr b. Thawr attacking it with [a group of] 'Ijl and Ḥanīfah, and it was called after him. He took it after the victory of Nihāwand, and thus not one 'Ijl, or one Ḥanafi, was present at Nihāwand; they remained with al-Nusayr stationed at the castle. Nevertheless, when [the Muslims] made a comprehensive assessment of the immovable booty of Nihāwand and the castles, they gave all of them a share in it, as they had given one another support. From that time on they gave a name according to its characteristics to everything they observed between Marj al-Qalʿah and Nihāwand, [that is,] the area they had already passed through, and what they had observed from al-Marj to it. Some riding camels (rikāb) jostled together on one of the mountain roads [sing. thaniyyah] of Māḥ, so it was called al-Rikāb, or Thaniyyat al-Rikāb. They came upon another the

91. That is, the dual of the Persian word māḥ = Arabic qaṣabah. The former is south, the latter southwest of Hamadhān. See Yaḵūt, Muʿjam, V, 48; Le Strange, Lands, 196–97; Translation, XIII, 4, 199; EI², s.v. “Māḥ al-Baṣra,” “Māḥ al-Kūfa” [Morony]. See also note 2.
92. That is, Nihāwand, see note 91.
93. That is, al-Nusayr b. Daysam b. Thawr al-ʿIjlī, about whom there is no information. ʿIjl here are presumably ʿIjl b. Lujaym b. ʿAmr, a tribal division (bāṭn) of Bakr b. Wāʿil, originally occupying an area between al-Yamāmah and al-Baṣrah; see EI², s.v. “ʿIjl” [Watt]. ʿIjl and Ḥanīfah are closely related tribal groups [EI², s.v. “Ḥanīfa” [Watt]]. See also Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 309, 312, Caskel, Gamharat, I, Tables 141, 156, 175; Kahhālah, Muʿjam, I, 312, II, 757.
94. Arabic fayʿ. See EI², s.v. [Løkkegaard].
track of which went round a rock, so they called it Malwiyyah (twisted). Their original names were obliterated, and they were given names in keeping with their characteristics. (The Muslims) passed by the long mountain overlooking [other] mountains, and one of them said that it was like the tooth of Sumayrah—Sumayrah was a Ḍabbī woman from Banū Mu‘āwiyyah, one of those who migrated with the Prophet, who had a tooth projecting over her [other] teeth, so this mountain was named after her tooth. Ḥudhayfah had sent Nu‘aym b. Muqarrin and al-Qa‘qā’ b. ‘Amr in pursuit of the defeated troops of Nihāwand. The two reached Hamadhān, and Khusrawshunūm made peace with them. They left (the Hamadhānis) and returned; then later he reneged. When ‘Umar’s agreement with (Khusrawsunūm) arrived among those dispatched by him, [Nu‘aym] bade Ḥudhayfah farewell, and Ḥudhayfah did [likewise], (Nu‘aym) making for Hamadhān, while (Ḥudhayfah) made to return to al-Kūfah. (The latter) appointed as deputy of Nihāwand and al-Dinawar ‘Amr b. Bilāl b. al-Ḥārith.

‘Umar’s letter to Nu‘aym b. Muqarrin [included the instruction] to march on Hamadhān, dispatch Suwayd b. Muqarrin in charge of his vanguard and Rib‘ī b. ‘Āmir and Muhalhil b. Zayd—the latter a Ṣā‘ī, the former a Tamimi—in charge of the wings. So Nu‘aym b. Muqarrin went forth with his [army] in formation. He went down Thaniyyat al-‘Asal (the Mountain Road of Honey). It had been given this name because of the honey found there after the battle of Nihāwand, where they pursued the defeated troops. [At that time] al-Fayruzān had

95. That is, Ḍabbah b. Shihāb b. Mu‘āwiyyah, rather than the better-known Ḍabbah b. Udd; see Caskel, Gamharat, I, Table 309.
96. A Tamimi hero of both Qādisiyyah and Nihāwand, his exploits are much emphasized by Sayf b. ‘Umar. See Tabari, I, 2459–64 and 2626–28; Translation, XIII, passim, in particular 39–43, 209–11, EI2, s.v. (Zetterstén).
97. The Persian general; see Morony, Iraq, 194.
98. ‘Amr b. Bilāl b. al-Ḥārith is unidentified.
100. The Persian general in charge of the army defeated at Nihāwand. See Morony, Iraq, 192–93, for earlier events in which he played a part.
reached [the road], which was crowded with beasts of burden carrying honey and other things, so he was hemmed in by them until he dismounted. Then he had gone up the mountain. His horse, [being riderless], had gone back down and was pursued and [eventually] taken. When they stopped at Kinkiwar, \(^{101}\) some of the Muslims' animals were stolen, so it was given the name Qaṣr al-Luṣūṣ (Stronghold of Thieves).

Then Nu‘aym went down the mountain road and stopped at the town of Hamadhan. But they had already fortified it against [the Muslims], so he besieged [the Hamdānīs], taking the area between there and Jarmidān. \(^{102}\) [The Muslims] took control of the whole area of Hamadhan. When the inhabitants of the town realized this, they sued for peace [with the request] that he treat them and those who had [originally] complied [with his demand to surrender] exactly alike. This he did and accepted tribute from them for their protection. He divided up Dastābā\(^{103}\) among a group of Kūfīs, [comprising] Iṣmah b. ‘Abdallāh al-Ḍabbī, Muḥalhil b. Zayd al-Ṭā‘ī, Simāk b. ‘Ubayd al-‘Absī, \(^{104}\) Simāk b. Makhramah al-Asādī, \(^{105}\) and Simāk b. Kharashah al-ʾAnṣārī. \(^{106}\) These were the first to be appointed governors over the frontier regions\(^{107}\) of Dastābā and to fight the Daylām. \(^{108}\)

But, according to al-Wāqīdī: The conquest of Hamadhan and

\(^{101}\) Persian Kangavar, a small town between Hamadhān and Qarmisin. See Yaḥūt, Mu’jam, IV, 484, who mentions Qaṣr al-Luṣūṣ; Spuler, Iran, 127 and end maps; Barthold, Geography, 195; El, s.v. “Kinkiwar” (Savory). See also Bal’ami, Chronique, III, 482.

\(^{102}\) Yaḥūt’s “A place in al-Jabal; I think it is in the regions of Hamadhan” (II, 129) is not very helpful. This must be a small place, not far from the town of Hamadhan.

\(^{103}\) Dastābā is the extensive area between al-Rayy and Hamadhan, and this is clearly what is meant here. See Yaḥūt, Mu’jam, II, 454; Le Strange, Lands, 220. It is given as a town on Map 1, 60–61, of the CHIr, IV.

\(^{104}\) Warrior in the eastern conquests. Lives until the end of the caliphate of Mu‘āwiyah. See Ibn Ḥajar, Iṣābāh, IV, 254; Hill, Termination, 122, 129.


\(^{107}\) Masālīḥ the eastern equivalents of the western thughūr; i.e., the regions on the edge of Muslim control as they pushed eastward.

\(^{108}\) For the land and its people, see El, s.v. [Minorsky]. The territory of Daylām is the highlands of Ḫilān.
al-Rayy took place in 23 [November 19, 643—November 7, 644]. According to him also: It is said that Qarażah b. Ka‘b109 conquered al-Rayy.

Also according to [al-Waqidi]—Rabi‘ah b. ‘Uthmān:110 The conquest of Hamadhān took place in [the month of] Jumādā I, exactly six months after the murder of ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb. Its commander was al-Mughirah b. Shu‘bah.

According to [al-Waqidi]: It is also reported that the conquest of al-Rayy took place two years before the death of ‘Umar. It is also said that ‘Umar was killed while his armies were [engaged in hostilities] against it.111

To return to Sayf’s account: While Nu‘aym was at the head of 12,000 troops in the town of Hamadhān, engaged in subduing it, the Daylam, the inhabitants of al-Rayy, and those of Azerbaijan entered into correspondence among themselves. Then Mūtā,112 at the head of the Daylam, went forth and halted at Wāj Ṣūdā.113 Al-Zīnabī Abū al-Farrukhān,114 at the head of the Rayy army, arrived to join him, and Isfandiyād, brother of Rustam, did the same at the head of the Azerbaijan army.115 The commanders of the Dastabā frontier regions116 fortified themselves and sent to Nu‘aym, giving him the news. So he ap-

---


112. This Daylamī leader appears as Mūthā in Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, V, 341. Wāj Ṣūdā is situated between Hamadhān and Qazwīn. Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, V, 341, gives the date of the battle as 29.

113. I vocalize this Persian proper name thus after reference to Justi, Namenbuch, 386. But see cf. Ba‘ami Chronique, III, 489, al-Zīnabī; and Hill, Termination, 128, etc., al-Zaynābī.

114. Isfandiyād was the brother of Rustam b. Farrukhzād, the Persian general defeated at al-Qādisiyyah. See Zarrinkūb, “Conquest,” 10.

115. That is, ‘Īṣāmah, Muḥalhil, and the three Simāk, see above.
pointed Yazid b. Qays as his deputy and went to do battle against (the Persians) at the head of his army, coming down upon them at Waj al-Rudh. They fought together there vehemently; it was a great battle like Nihawand, not at all inferior. Great, incalculable numbers were killed, and the bloody struggle between them was no less than [other] great battles. They had already written to 'Umar of the amassing [of forces] against them. He was disturbed at this [assembly of troops at Waj al-Rudh] and was worried about the [outcome of the] battle. He expected [news] of them coming through and was taken by surprise only by the message bearing the good news [of the victory]. He said, “Is that someone bearing good news [bashir]?” The reply was, “[No], it is 'Urwah!” When he repeated his question, ['Urwah] understood and replied, “[Yes], good news [bashir]!” 'Umar asked if it was the envoy of Nu'aym and was told it was. He asked for the news and was told the good news of the conquest and victory. He gave him [all] the news. ['Umar] praised God and ordered the letter to be read out to the people, and they too praised God. Then Simak b. Makhramah, Simak b. 'Ubayd, and Simak b. Kharashah arrived at the head of the delegations of the Kufans with the fifths [of booty for the state treasury] to see 'Umar. He asked them their lineage and all three Simaks told him. He said: “God bless you! O God, raise up [usmuk] Islam through them and strengthen them through Islam!”

Dastaba and its frontier regions as far as [the town of] Hamadhan were [treated as] part of [the province of] Hamadhān until the envoy returned to Nu'aym b. Muqarrin with the reply from 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb. [In it he instructed him] to appoint a deputy over Hamadhān, reinforce Bukayr b. 'Abdallāh [in Azerbaijan] by means of Simak b. Kharashah, proceed to al-Rayy,
face their army in battle, and remain there, as it was the most central and unified part of this territory for his purposes. So Nu‘aym established Yazid b. Qays al-Hamdānī in charge of Hamadhān and marched out from Wāj al-Rūdh with his army to al-Rayy.

Nu‘aym recited the following concerning Wāj al-Rūdh:120

When I heard that Mūtā121 and his tribe, Banū Bāsīl,122 had driven on their Persian armies,123 I roused up my armies against them, competing in glory, that I might deny them with my swords my protection.124 We brought upon them our steel [armor]—’twas as if we were mountains looming up through the branches of the qalāṣīm trees.125

When we met them in battle at [Wāj al-Rūdh, the valley] wide and abundant in trees, they having already begun to rear up to fight like a champion,

We repelled them at Wāj Rūdh with our force on the morning we inflicted upon (the Persians) one of the great calamities.126

They could not endure for any time at all, as death hovered, against our sharp spears127 and cutting swords.

When their forces scattered, they were like a wall the baked brick of which has crumbled with destroying blows.

---

120. Meter ṭawāl. Yaqūt, Mu‘jam, V, 341, quotes lines 1, 5, 6, 8, and 10.
121. Yaqūt, Mu‘jam, V, 341, Mūthāj, i.e., the ruler of Daylam.
122. This is the claim that the Daylamites are descended from Bāsīl b. Dabbah. See Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 203 [“wa-Bāsīlu bnu Dabbah, yuqālu inna al-Daylama min waladi-h"], Caskel, Gamharat, I, Table 89.
123. Yaqūt, Mu‘jam, has khyūl for jumūd, “their Persian cavalry.”
124. Nu‘aym is here saying that he intends to slay them all and thus will not have to make arrangements for their protection [dhimmah] after the battle.
125. “Mountains” to signify the strength and bulk of the Muslim forces. I am unable to identify qalāṣīm, nor indeed find this species of tree in the lexica at my disposal.
126. That is, after the defeats of al-Qādisiyyah and Nihāwand, now Wāj (al)-Rūdh.
127. Yaqūt, Mu‘jam, reads bi-ḥaddi for li-ḥaddi.
We killed Mūtā there and his army around him;[2653] there was booty there quickly distributed.[2653]

We pursued them until they took refuge in their side wadis, slaughtering them as fierce dogs would!

'Twas as if they in Wāj Rūdh and in its wide valley were sheep killed by the gaping wounds from our spears.[130]

Simāk b. Makhramah’s name was given to the mosque of Simāk.[131]

Nu‘aym repeated the Hamadhān peace document in their case. He left as his deputy in charge of (Hamadhān) Yazid b. Qays al-Hamdānī. [Nu‘aym] himself marched with his armies and reached al-Rayy. The first Daylamites were [descended] from the Arabs, but Nu‘aym disputed (this opinion) with them.[132]

The Conquest of al-Rayy[133]

They report [also]: Nu‘aym b. Muqarrin left Wāj Rūdh, having laid it waste, at the head of the army [and made] for Dastaba. He departed thence for al-Rayy when [its inhabitants] had assembled together to [stand against] him. Al-Zīnabī Abū al-Farrukhān came out and met him at a place called Qihā[134] to make peace with him in defiance of the ruler of al-Rayy, once he had seen what the Muslims were like, [comparing their attitude] with the envy of Siyawakhsh and his family. So [al-Zinabi] came, together with Nu‘aym, while the ruler at that time in al-Rayy was [this] Siyawakhsh b. Mihrān b. Bahrām Shūbin.[135]
Siyāwakhsh asked the people of Dunbāwand, Ṭabaristān, Qūmis, and Jurjān for their help, saying, "You are already aware that, once these [Muslim troops] have occupied al-Rayy, there will be no place for you." So they [all] mustered to support Siyāwakhsh. Siyāwakhsh made to attack al-Zinabī. They met at the foot of the mountain of al-Rayy to one side of the town and did battle there. Al-Zinabī had said to Nuʾaym: "The enemy is numerous, whereas you are at the head of a small army. Send some cavalry with me. I shall take them into their town, [al-Rayy], by a way in that [even] [the locals] do not know. You attack them, for if [the cavalry] [with me also] comes out against them, they will not stand firm against you." So Nuʾaym despatched some cavalry with him by night under the command of his nephew, al-Mundhir b. 'Amr. Al-Zinabī took them into the town without the enemy's knowing, and Nuʾaym launched a surprise attack on [the latter] by night and distracted them away from [the defense of] their town. Battle was joined, and [the enemy] stood firm against [Nuʾaym] until they heard the cry [of the cavalry], "God is great," behind them. Then they were put to flight and were killed in such numbers as to be reckoned in fathoms. God gave the Muslims at al-Rayy about the same amount of spoils as those at al-Madāʾin. Al-Zinabī made peace with [Nuʾaym] for the inhabitants of al-Rayy, and [Nuʾaym] appointed him governor (marzabahu) over them. The honor of al-Rayy continued to be greatest among the family of al-Zinabī, including Shahram and Farrukhnān. The family of Bahram fell from grace, and Nuʾaym destroyed their town, which was called al-ʿĀtiqah (the Old Town); that is, the town of al-Rayy. Al-Zinabī gave orders for the building of the new town of al-Rayy.

Nuʾaym wrote to ʿUmar about the victory that God had

---

136. The great mountain that dominates Ṭabaristān and a small town, modern Damavand, to the south of the mountain. See Yāqūt, Muʾjam, II, 475, Le Strange, Lands, 371.
137. Al-Mundhir b. 'Amr was an early military leader who had fought with the Prophet. See Ibn al-Athir, Usd, III, 418–19.
139. The two sons of al-Zinabī, see Justi, Namenbuch, 276.
140. See note 135.
given him, [dispatching the letter] with al-Mudarib al-'Ijli.\footnote{141} He also sent the fifth parts [of the booty for the state treasury] with 'Utaybah b. al-Nahhas\footnote{142} and Abū Mufazzir,\footnote{143} along with some Kūfīan notables. ['Umar] sent Simāk b. Kharashah al-Anṣārī to reinforce Bukayr b. 'Abdallāh after al-Rayy had been conquered. So Simāk marched off to Azerbaijan as reinforcement for Bukayr. Nu‘aym wrote a document for the inhabitants of al-Rayy:

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. The following is what Nu‘aym b. Muqarrin has granted to al-Zinābī b. Qūlah. He has granted him security for the people of al-Rayy and those others with them on [payment of] tribute, as much as each one who has reached puberty can provide annually. They must give good advice and guidance and must not act treacherously or steal. They must provide hospitality to the Muslims for a whole day and a night and show them respect. Anyone who abuses a Muslim or holds him in contempt will be severely punished. Anyone who physically abuses him will be killed. If anyone of them reneges and is not handed over intact, your [whole] community [is deemed to] have reneged.

He wrote [it], and it was witnessed.

\footnote{141} Al-Mudarib al-'Ijli was a Companion or Follower, who has brief entries in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhīb, X, 166–67; Ibn al-Athir, Usd, III, 371.

\footnote{142} Little information appears to be available on 'Utaybah. See Donner, Conquests, 383; Ibn 'Abd Rabbih, 'Iqd, I, 283; Ishāhānī, Aghānī, II, 47–48.

\footnote{143} That is, al-Aswad b. Qūbah, a poet and warrior who was present at al-Qādisiyyah; see Ibn Ḥajar, Iṣdabah, I, 171; Translation, XIII, 11.

\footnote{144} The title masmughān has a religious connotation; see CHIT, 199.

\footnote{145} Arabic, "fi al-sulḥi 'alā shay'īn yaftadī bi-hi min-hum min ghayri an yas'ala-hu al-纳斯ra wa-al-man'ah."
In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. This is a document from Nu'aym b. Muqarrin to Mardānshāh, ruler of Dunbāwand and the people of Dunbāwand, al-Khuwār, al-Lāriz, and al-Shirriz. You and those who enter into this agreement with you will be secure on condition you refrain from hostile acts and on condition that you restrain the people of your territory. You will insure yourself against military action being taken against you by paying 200,000 dirhams, the weight of seven annually to whoever is governor of your region. You will not be attacked, nor will you be approached save by permission, as long as you remain within these conditions [and] unless you renge. If anyone reneges, he will not be covered by any agreement, nor will he who does not hand him over.

He wrote [the document] and it was witnessed.

The Conquest of Qūmis

They reported [also]: When Nu'aym wrote of the conquest of al-Rayy, [despatching the news] with al-Mudārib al-'Ijli, and when he submitted the fifths [of booty for the state treasury], 'Umar replied to him that he should send Suwayd b. Muqarrin in advance to Qūmis, posting in charge of his vanguard Simāk b. Makhramah, of his flanks 'Uṭaybah b. al-Nahhās and Hind b. 'Amr al-Jamali. Suwayd b. Muqarrin mobilized [his army] and moved from al-Rayy on Qūmis. No one showed him any resistance.

---

146. The westernmost town of Qūmis and the first important place east of al-Rayy. See Yāqūt, Muʿjam, II, 394, with no definite article; Le Strange, Lands, 367.

147. The MSS are far from clear here, and these place names are doubtful. Al-Khuwār is possible; see note 146, above. I can find no reference to a place called al-Lāriz in the sources at my disposal. But see El², s.v.v. “Lār” and “Lārijān” [Calmard].

148. Yāqūt, Muʿjam, III, 334, has a Shirriz, without the article, but this is a mountain in al-Daylam.

149. That is, every 10 dirhams weighing seven mithqāls. See Sauvaire, “Matériaux,” 460; see also Hinz, Masse, 1ff.

150. See Baladhuri, Futūh, 317ff.

151. An unidentified military leader.
hostility, so he took it peacefully and encamped there. When [his army] drank from a river belonging [to the people of Qūmis] called Malādh, they began to suffer from stiff necks, so Suwayd told them to change their [source of] water until they got used to it like the local inhabitants. They did so and found [the new supply] healthy. Those of [the locals] who had taken refuge in Ṭabaristān and those who had sought safe refuges sent [Suwayd] communications. So he called on them to make peace and [pay] tribute, writing to them as follows:

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful.
This is the guarantee of safety that Suwayd b. Muqarrin has granted to the people of Qūmis and to their followers, for their persons, their religion, and their possessions, on condition that they pay tribute directly, every one of them who has reached puberty according to his capacity [to pay], also on condition that they give good, not bad, advice, guide [the Muslims], and give hospitality to any Muslims who settle among them for a period of one day and one night with their ordinary food. If they renege and hold their agreement in contempt, then the convenant no longer applies to them.

He wrote [the document] and it was witnessed.

The Conquest of Jurjān

They reported [also]: Suwayd b. Muqarrin encamped at Bistām. He wrote to the ruler of Jurjān, Ruzbān Šūl. [Suwayd] marched

152. I cannot identify River Malādh, but it must be in Qūmis.
154. See Qur'ān, V:89.
156. A town less than 50 miles northeast of the capital of Qūmis, Dāmghān, it is the second town of the province. See Yaqūt, Mu'jam, I, 421–22; Le Strange, Lands, 364–65 and Map V, opposite 185.
157. Ruzbān Šūl himself is not further identified. For Šūl, see Translation, XXXIII, 44 n. 148.
on (Jurjân) and Ruzbân Šûl entered into correspondence with him. (Ruzbân Šûl) hastened to make peace with him, [with the provision] that he should pay tribute and that he would save (Suwayd) the trouble of making war on Jurjân, if (Suwayd) were being defeated, (Ruzbân Šûl) would give him assistance. (Suwayd) accepted his terms. He was met by Ruzbân Šûl before he entered Jurjân, and he went in with him. He encamped there until the collection of the taxes had been carried out and until he had specified [the various] frontier regions (of Jurjân) by name. He allocated the Turks of Dihistan, [to look after] them, removing the tribute from those who remained to defend them and taking taxes from the remainder of the people of (Jurjân). He drew up a document between them and himself as follows:

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful.

This is a document from Suwayd b. Muqarrin to Ruzbân Šûl b. Ruzbân and the people of Dihistan and all of those of Jurjân. You have our covenant, while it is our duty to protect [you], on condition that you pay tribute annually according to your capacity, everyone who has reached the age of puberty. Any one of you whose help we seek shall pay his tribute in the form of assistance he renders instead of his [regular] tribute. The guarantee of safety covers their persons, their possessions, and their religion and laws. Nothing of all this can be broken; it remains in force for them as long as they pay [their dues], guide the traveler, give good advice, provide hospitality to the

---

158. I translate the Arabic kharāj "taxes." This term and the word jizyah, which alone of the two has appeared in the text so far, were undoubtedly synonymous in early Islam, with the meaning of tribute. The terms were later refined in Islamic law and kharāj took on the technical meaning of land tax. It should be noted, however, that here both terms are to be found in the same paragraph [and are perhaps not synonymous at all] and that, when it comes to the actual document, only jizyah is used. Here, however, Suwayd not only collected the kharāj, but also busied himself with the assessment of the frontier regions (furūj) of Jurjân, as if for the purpose of levying some sort of tax based on the land. For the two terms, see EI², s.v.v. "djizya" and "kharadj" (Cahen), Ben Shemesh, Taxation, 19–20.

159. An area to the north of Jurjân is clearly meant here, although the name is given several locations in Yaqût. See Mu'jam, II, 492, Le Strange, Lands, 379–81.
Muslims, and perpetrate no theft or any treacherous act. He who stays among them has similar rights to theirs. He who leaves remains in safety until he reaches "his place of safety."\(^{160}\) There is also the condition that anyone abusing a Muslim will be dealt with very severely. Anyone physically abusing him may be killed.\(^{161}\)

[2659] It was witnessed by Sawād b. Quṭbah,\(^{162}\) Hind b. 'Amr, Simāk b. Makhramah and 'Utaybah b. al-Nahhās. It was drawn up in the year 18 [January 12, 639–January 2, 640].

But al-Mada'ini\(^{163}\) reported on the authority of Abū Zayd:\(^{164}\) Jurjān was conquered in the time of 'Uthmān in the year 30 [September 4, 650–August 24, 651].

The Conquest of Čabaristān\(^{165}\)

[The same sources] continued: The ruler [of Čabaristān] sent messages to Suwayd on the subject of a peace on the understanding that they make a formal pact and that (Suwayd) propose terms to him without his being obliged to render help or assistance against anyone. (Suwayd) accepted these terms and gave [the people of Čabaristān] what they wanted. He wrote him a document [as follows]:

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. This is a document from Suwayd b. Muqarrin addressed to al-Farrukhan, ruler of Khurāsān in authority over Čabaristān and to the ruler [jiil] of Jilān,\(^ {166}\) our [previous] enemy. You will be secure in God's safekeeping on condition that you restrain your robbers and the people

---

161. Arabic, "ḥalla damu-h."
162. Sawād b. Quṭbah al-Tamīmī has a brief entry in Ibn al-Athīr, Usd, II, 375, where these events are mentioned.
164. An unidentified narrator.
165. See Baladhūrī, Futūḥ, 334ff.
166. See El', s.v. "Māzyār" [Minorsky]. Jīlān was a small province at the west end of the southern Caspian shore. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, II, 201; Le Strange, Lands, 172 and Map 5, opposite 185.
on the borders of your territory. You will harbor nobody or nothing we are seeking and you will insure yourself [against military action against you] by [paying] anyone governing your border territory 500,000 dirhams, those [in use] in your territory. If you carry [all] this out, none of us will have a right to attack you, or to invade your territory, or [even] to approach you without your permission. Our way to you, provided that we obtain your permission, will be in safety, just as yours [to us] will be. Do not harbor anybody or anything we are seeking. Do not steal what is ours, [as if acting] against an enemy, or carry out any treacherous act. If you do, there will be no pact between us.

It was witnessed by Sawād b. Quṭbah al-Tamīmī, Hind b. 'Amr al-Murādī, Simāk b. Makhramah al-Asadī, Simāk b. 'Ubayd al-'Ansī and 'Utaybah b. al-Nahhās al-Bakrī. It was drawn up in the year 18 [January 12, 639–January 2, 640].

The Conquest of Azerbaijan

[The same sources] made [the following] report. When Nu‘aym conquered Hamadhān for a second time and marched on al-Rayy from Wāj Rūdh, ‘Umar wrote to him, [instructing] him to despatch Simāk b. Kharashah al-Anṣārī to reinforce Bukayr b. ‘Abdallāh in Azerbaijan. But [Nu‘aym] delayed [the implementation of] this [instruction] until he had taken al-Rayy. Then [Nu‘aym] sent [Simāk] from al-Rayy and he marched to join Bukayr in Azerbaijan. Now Simāk b. Kharashah and ‘Utba b. Farqad were two rich Arabs, having [originally] brought their wealth to al-Kūfah. Bukayr had already set off, when he was sent to (Azerbaijan), but, when he came up opposite Jarmidhā b. al-Farrukhzād, fleeing from Wāj Rūdh, advanced on him (and his men). [This] was the first fighting (Bukayr) encountered in Azerbaijan. They fought and God put (Isfandiyādī’s) army to flight; Bukayr took him prisoner. Isfandiyādī asked him whether he preferred peace or war. He replied that he preferred

167. See Balādhuri, Futūh, 325ff, Balʿami, Chronique, III, 494; CHlr, 20.
peace. [Isfandiyādh] said, "Keep me with you, for if I make no peace treaty involving the people of Azerbaijan, nor join [them], they will not stand up to you, but will disperse into the surrounding Caucasus mountains and those of Asia Minor [min al-Qabīj wa-al-Rūm]. Those who can fortify themselves [there] will do so for some time." So [Bukayr] held [Isfandiyādh] with him, keeping him in his control. [All] the area fell to him except what was fortified. Simāk b. Kharashah joined him as reinforcement, whereas Isfandiyādh [remained] in [Bukayr's] custody, having taken the regions near him, while 'Utbah b. Farqad had taken those near him. Bukayr said to Simāk, when the latter came to him, joking with him, "What am I to do with you and 'Utbah, with two such rich men?! If I obey my instincts, I shall advance and leave you two behind as deputies. But you can remain with me if you so wish, or you can join 'Utbah if you so wish. I give you a free hand, as I see no alternative but to leave you both and go after something more unpleasant than this!" So [Bukayr] sought permission of 'Umar to be excused, and he wrote to [Bukayr], permitting him to advance on al-Bāb and ordering him to appoint a deputy over his province, [Azerbaijan]. So he appointed 'Utbah deputy over the regions he had conquered. [Bukayr] advanced, having handed over Isfandiyādh to 'Utbah, who took him into his entourage. 'Utbah also appointed Simāk b. Kharashah—not Abu Dujānah—over [that part of] Bukayr's province that he had conquered. 'Umar united the whole of Azerbaijan under 'Utbah b. Farqad.

(The same sources) report [as follows]. Now Bahrām b. al-Farrukhzādhi had taken the route to be used by 'Utbah b. Farqad, and he waited for him at the head of his troops until 'Utbah arrived. Battle was joined and 'Utbah defeated [Bahrām] who fled. When the news reached Isfandiyādh, who was in the custody of Bukayr, of Bahrām's defeat and flight, he said, "Now
the peace is complete and war has been brought to an end." So (Bukayr) made peace with (Isfandyâdh), and all (the people of Azerbaijan) agreed to this. The country returned to a state of peace. Bukayr and 'Utbah wrote to inform 'Umar of this and sent the fifth of what booty God had granted them. They also sent out delegations with this news. Bukayr had conquered the regions near him before 'Utbah and peace was [only] complete after 'Utbah's defeat of Bahram. 'Utbah drew up a document between himself and the people of Azerbaijan in which Bukayr's province was united with his own:

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. This is what 'Utbah b. Farqad, the governor of 'Umar b. al-Khattab, Commander of the Faithful, has granted to the people of Azerbaijan, mountains and plains, borders and frontiers, all people of whatever religion, viz., security for their persons, their possessions, their religion and laws, on condition that they pay the tribute according to their capacity [to do so]. There is no [such] obligation for minors, or women, or the chronically poor who have nothing of the present world, or religious devotees remaining in isolation who have nothing of the present world. All this [is granted] to them and to those who live with them. But they are obliged to give hospitality to Muslim soldiers for the period of a day and a night and to guide them. Those who are recruited for military service172 in any one year are exempt the tribute of that year. He who remains [from now on] shall be granted the same [concessions] and have [the same obligations] as he who has remained [permanently], whereas he who leaves has safe-conduct until he finds his place of refuge.

Jundub173 wrote down [the document], which was witnessed by Bukayr b. 'Abdallah al-Laythi and Simak b. Kharashah al-Ansâri.

---

172. Arabic, "wa-man hushira min-hum fî sanatin." It might also be rendered "Those who suffer distress", that is, drought, crop failure, etc.
173. Jundub is unidentified.
The Conquest of Iran

[The document] was drafted in the year 18 [January 12, 639–January 2, 640].

[The same sources] relate [as follows]. In this year also [22; November 30, 642–November 19, 643] 'Utba brought 'Umar some sweet date mix that he gave him as a gift. Now 'Umar used to require his governors every year to perform the pilgrimage, thereby restraining them from any [act of] tyranny and preventing them from [doing] any such thing.

[2663] In this same year [22; November 30, 642–November 19, 643] [the following] took place.

The Conquest of al-Bab

According to Sayf, they, that is, those whose names I have previously mentioned, reported [as follows]. 'Umar sent Abū Mūsā back to al-Baṣrah and Surāqab b. 'Amr, known as Dhū al-Nūr, to al-Bāb. He appointed over his vanguard 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Rabi'ah who was also known as Dhū al-Nūr. He appointed over one of the wings Ḫūdhayfah b. Asid al-Ghifārī and named for the other Bukayr b. Abdallāh al-Laythī, who was already facing al-Bāb before Surāqab b. 'Amr reached him. ('Umar) wrote to (Surāqab), instructing him to join up with (Bukayr). ('Umar) also appointed Salmān b. Rabi'ah in charge of the division of the spoils. Surāqab placed 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Rabi'ah in the van and set out immediately behind him. When he had left Azerbaijan on his way to al-Bāb, he came upon Bukayr at the approaches to al-Bāb. He proceeded slowly with him and entered the region of al-Bāb, as 'Umar had planned it. 'Umar sent him Ḫabīb b. Maslamah as reinforcement, having diverted him from al-Jazīrah. He also sent Ziyād b. Ḫanzālah in (Ḫabīb's) place in charge of al-Jazīrah. When 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Rabi'ah approached the ruler in al-Bāb (he being at that time

Shahrbarāz, a Persian who was in control of this frontier area and whose origins were from the family of Shahrbarāz, the ruler who had routed the Israelites and driven them out of al-Shām,177 Shahrbarāz sent him messages and sought safe-conduct to come to him. ['Abd al-Raḥmān] agreed, and he came and said, "I am facing a rabid enemy and different communities who are not of noble descent. It is not fitting for the noble and intelligent to assist such people or to ask their help against those of noble descent and origins. Noblemen [stick] close to noblemen, wherever they are. I am certainly not a Caucasian or an Armenian. You have conquered my land and my community. Now I am one of you; I am completely with you and my inclinations are the same as yours. God bless us and you! Our tribute to you will be the military assistance we render you and our carrying out whatever you desire. But do not humiliate us with tribute, so that you render us weak against your enemy." 'Abd al-Raḥmān replied, "There is someone superior to me who has already taken you into his protection; go to him." So he passed him over to Surāqah. When [Shahrbarāz] came to him, he found a similar attitude on his part. Surāqah said, "I accept this for your followers in this enterprise, as long as they continue to be so engaged. But anyone remaining and not moving off [elsewhere] must pay the tribute." [Shahrbarāz] accepted this, and it became the practice for those polytheists who made war on the enemy and for those who had to provide no tribute other than to be ready to fight and were thus exempt from the tribute [altogether] of that particular year.178 Surāqah wrote to 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb on this (point of practice), and he gave him his permission to carry it out and [expressed] his approval of it.

Those territories in the mountainous zone comprised only high ground in which the Armenians remained in readiness for a speedy departure. They were only inhabitants from the immediate vicinity or from more distant parts whose high ground

177. Shahrbarāz, the Persian military commander in question is unidentified. For his ancestors, see Nöldeke, Geschichte, 290–92, 294ff., 299ff. I am unable to provide further information on the incident mentioned in the text.

178. Arabic, wā-ḥi-ḥan iλ̃ riṭd of an ṣimān ḫa-tūdā'u 'ān-hu jīzā'u tilka al-sanah. That is, whether they actually fight or not is immaterial. If they stand ready to fight, they are exempt the tribute.
had been removed from them by raids from lowlanders. The mountain folk among them took to their refuges in their mountains and pulled out of their lowland territories. So only the military and those supporting them or doing business with them remained there. [The Armenians] received a document from Surāqah b. 'Amr [as follows].

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. This is the safe-conduct Surāqah b. 'Amr, governor of the Commander of the Faithful, 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, has granted to Shahrbarāz, the inhabitants of Armenia, and the Armenians [in al-Bāb]. [He grants] them safe-conduct for their persons, their possessions, and their religion lest they be harmed and so that nothing be taken from them. [The following is imposed] upon the people of Armenia and al-Abwāb, those coming from distant parts and those who are local and those around them who have joined them: that they should participate in any military expedition, and carry out any task, actual or potential, that the governor considers to be for the good, providing that those who agree to this are exempt from tribute but [perform] military service. Military service shall be instead of their paying tribute. But those of them who are not needed for military service and who remain inactive have similar tribute obligations to the people of Azerbaijan [in general]. [These include] guiding and showing hospitality for a whole day. If they perform military service, they are exempt from [all] this. If they abandon [the agreement], they will be punished.

179. The translation of these two difficult, and seemingly corrupt, sentences is tentative. The Arabic reads: wa-laysa li-tilka al-bilādi allati fi sāḥati tilka al-jibālī nabakun lam yuqīm al-'Armanu bi-hā illā 'ala awḍāzin wa-innama hum sukānun mimman ūbāla-hā wa-min al-ṭurrā'ī ista'salat al-ghāratu nabakahā min ahli al-qatār.

The Events of the Year 22

'Abd al-Rahmān b. Rabī‘ah, Salmān b. Rabī‘ah and Bukayr b. Abdallāh were witnesses. Marḍī b. Muqarrin\textsuperscript{181} drafted it and was a witness.

Thereafter Surāqah despatched Bukayr b. 'Abdallāh, Ḥabīb b. Maslamah, Ḥudhayfah b. Asīd, and Salmān b. Rabī‘ah to the people of those mountains surrounding Armenia. He also despatched Bukayr to Müqān,\textsuperscript{182} Ḥabīb to Tiflis,\textsuperscript{183} Ḥudhayfah b. Asīd to the people of the mountains of Allān,\textsuperscript{184} and Salmān b. Rabī‘ah to the other side. Surāqah wrote to 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb of the conquest and of the circumstances in which he despatched these people. So 'Umar learned of something that he did not think would be accomplished for him so quickly and without trouble. It was a vast frontier region in which there were large numbers of [enemy] military, and the Persians were waiting to see what [the Muslims] would do and then would cease fighting or carry it on [further]. When they had settled down and come to appreciate the fairness of Islam, Surāqah died, leaving 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Rabī‘ah as his successor, as all the leaders whom Surāqah had despatched had passed on [to other areas] and none of them had conquered what he had been sent to conquer, with the exception of Bukayr. He had scattered [the people of] Müqān and then they returned, gradually [agreeing to the payment] of tribute. (Bukayr) drew up a document for them [as follows]:

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful.
This is what Bukayr b. Abdallāh has granted to the

\textsuperscript{181} This secretary is mentioned only here in the text. He is the brother of Nu‘aym and Suwayd. See Ibn Ḥajar, Isābah, IX, 168, with a reference to this document.
\textsuperscript{182} Or Mūghān/Mūghkān. The great plain that extends south of the River Aras along the west coast of the Caspian. See Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, V, 225; Le Strange, Lands, 175–76 and Map 3, 87.
\textsuperscript{183} Capital of Georgia (Jurjistān) on the upper reaches of the River Kur. See Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, II, 35–37; Le Strange, Lands, 181.
\textsuperscript{184} Allān is one of the districts of the Khazars, north of Georgia. Yāqūt simply says that it is an extensive area on the edge of Armenia, near al-Bāb, its people bordering the land of the Khazars. Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, V, 8–9, Le Strange, Lands, 179.
people of Mūqān in the Caucasus Mountains: safe-conduct for their possessions, their persons, their religion, and their laws on the payment of tribute, a dinar or its equivalent on every male who has reached puberty. [He must give] sound advice, guidance, and hospitality for a day and a night to the Muslim. They shall have safe-conduct as long as they submit themselves [to these conditions] and give good advice. We also must carry out [our obligations] in full, and God's help is to be sought. But, if they abandon this [agreement] and their perfidy becomes evident, they shall have no safe-conduct, unless they hand over every one of those who act perfidiously; otherwise they are [all] aiding and abetting one another.

Al-Shammākh b. Dirār,185 al-Rusāris b. Junādīb,186 and Ḥamalah b. Juwayyah187 were witnesses. It was drafted in the year 21 [December 10, 641–November 30, 642].

(The same sources) have reported [as follows]. When 'Umar heard of the death of Surāqah and that he had made 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Rabi'ah his successor, he confirmed the latter in charge of the frontier region of al-Bāb, ordering him also to attack the Turks. So 'Abd al-Raḥmān set out with his army and passed through al-Bāb. Shahrbarāz asked him what he intended to accomplish, and he replied that he intended [to take] Balanjār.188 [Shahrbarāz] said, "We are indeed happy that (the people of Balanjār) leave us with al-Bāb." But ('Abd al-Raḥmān) replied, "But we are not happy with this [situation] in our dealings with them until we get at them in their own territory. We have with us men with whose help, if our commander were to allow us to persevere, I would push on to the rampart."

---

186. This unidentified witness features only in this place in the text.
187. A Kinānī mentioned only on one other occasion in the text under the year 14; see Ṭabarī, I, 2236.
188. A town in the territory of the Khazars, north of the River Aras. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, I, 489–90.
189. I take this to refer to the great wall—reportedly built by Anūšīrvān in the sixth century A.D.—which ran westward from the town of al-Bāb over the mountains to keep out the warring tribes to the north. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, I, 303, Le Strange, Lands, 180, Barthold, Historical Geography, 229.
(Shahrbarāz) asked who they were, and (‘Abd al-Raḥmān) told him they were men who had accompanied the Messenger of God and who had intentionally become involved in this enterprise.\footnote{190} Before Islam they were men of good conduct and honor, and both qualities had [since] increased. They were still so involved, victory was still theirs until some conqueror could change them and until they could be deflected from their attitude by someone changing them. So (‘Abd al-Raḥmān) made one attack on Balanjar in the time of 'Umar, during which no woman was widowed and no child orphaned. During the attack on it his cavalry reached as far as al-Bayḍā', no nearer than 200 parasangs from Balanjar.\footnote{191} Then he attacked [again] and survived. Later, in the time of 'Uthmān, he made many attacks. ‘Abd al-Raḥmān was killed when the Kufans rebelled during the time ‘Uthmān was Commander of the Faithful, because (the latter) appointed as governors former apostates in order to seek to reform them. But this did not reform them; rather they became more disobedient, led as they were by those seeking [only] this present world. They caused a great deal of trouble for ‘Uthmān, and he used [the following verse] as an example [of their obstructive behavior]:\footnote{192}

\begin{center}
I, with regard to 'Amr, was like a man who fattened up his dog, but he was [nevertheless bitten] by its canine teeth and scratched by its claws!
\end{center}

According to al-Sarī—Shu‘ayb—Sayf—al-Ghuṣn b. al-Qāsim\footnote{193} —a man of B. Kinānah\footnote{194} —Salāmān b. Rabī‘ah: When ‘Abd al-

\begin{itemize}
\item[190.] The “enterprise” I take to mean Islam itself, although it might refer to the conquests being undertaken by the Muslims.
\item[191.] Al-Bayḍā' must be a place name here, although I can trace no further reference to it. A parasang is generally reckoned to be 3 miles, see Hinz, Masse, 62, about 6 kilometers.
\item[192.] The meter is tawīl.
\item[193.] Al-Kinānī. He first appears as a narrator in the year 11; see Ṭabarī, 1, 1977.
\item[194.] I here include the editorial addition from the Leiden apparatus criticus, because al-Ghuṣn b. al-Qāsim was from Banū Kinānah himself and other similar chains of authority include the added phrase. Banū Kinānah is Kinānah b. Khuzaymah, a large tribal confederation of 'Adnān living in the Hejaz. See Kāḥbālah, Mu‘jam, III, 996–97.
\end{itemize}
Rahmân b. Rabî’ah penetrated [their ranks], God prevented the Turks from attacking him. They remarked, “This man has dared to attack us only because the angels are with them protecting them from death!” So they retired and fortified themselves against him. But he came back with the spoils and victory, and this was during the time ‘Umar was Commander of the Faithful. Then he made several attacks on them during the time of ‘Uthmân; he was victorious, as he had been [previously]. Then the Kufans rebelled because ‘Uthmân appointed as governors former apostates. After this he attacked them. The Turks blamed one another, one saying to another, “They are not dying!”, he replied that they should keep watch. They did so and lay in ambush for them in the thickets. One of them shot a Muslim unexpectedly and killed him, upon which his men fled. So [the Muslims] attacked him at that point, and battle was joined. [The Muslims] fought hard and somebody cried out into the air, “Stand fast, men of ‘Abd al-Rahmân, you are promised paradise!” ‘Abd al-Rahmân fought until he was killed and the two sides stood apart. Then Salmân b. Rabî’ah took up the standard and fought with it. Someone shouted out into the air, “Stand fast, men of Salmân b. Rabî’ah!” Salmân retorted, “Can you see any lack of resolve?!” Then he went forth with the army. Salmân and Abû Hurayrah al-Dawsi attacked Jilân and passed through it to arrive in Jurjân. The Turks showed their daring after this and felt no restraint in taking up the body of ‘Abd al-Rahmân, using his name until now to seek rain.

According to ‘Amr b. Ma’di Karib—Maṭar b. Thalj al-Tamîmi: I went in to see ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. Rabî’ah in al-Bâb, when Shahrbarâz was with him. A man in a state of fatigue

---

195. Arabic, “wa-inkashafa al-nâs.” I take this difficult phrase to indicate a temporary lull in the fighting after ‘Abd al-Rahmân’s death. For this meaning of the Arabic verb, see Dozy, Supplement, II, 470.

196. Famous in particular as a narrator [d. ca. 58/677]. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, XII, 262–67; EI², s.v. [Robson]; Rosenthal, Historiography, 334.

197. It is a common practice even to this day throughout the Middle East to pray for rain in times of drought. These non-Muslim Turks presumably had some kind of rain-seeking ceremony during which ‘Abd al-Rahmân’s name was invoked. See EI², s.v. “istisâkā” [Fahd].

198. Maṭar b. Thalj al-Tamîmi, an unidentified narrator. The name means Rain, son of Snow! He appears only in this context in the text.
and emaciation arrived and came in to see ‘Abd al-Raḥmān. He sat down next to Shahrbarāz. Now Maṭar was wearing a cloak of striped Yemeni cloth with a reddish ground and black figuring or reddish figuring and a black ground. (The man and Shahrbarāz) questioned one another. Then Shahrbarāz said (to ‘Abd al-Raḥmān), “Commander, do you know where this man has come from? I sent him some years ago to the wall to examine what it and the people on the other side of it were like. I gave him great wealth and wrote on his behalf to those [in authority] in the territories adjoining mine, presenting each with a gift and asking him to write on [my envoy’s] behalf to the next one. I gave him a gift for each ruler, and he carried all this out in the case of every ruler until he finally reached the one in whose own land the wall was situated. So [the ruler] wrote on [the envoy’s] behalf to his governor of this area, and [the envoy] reached [the governor]. (The latter) sent with him his austringer, carrying his eagle, and [the envoy] gave him a piece of silk.” (The envoy) reported, “The austringer thanked me, and we eventually arrived at two mountains with a wall in between them that was level with them and even went higher. In front of the wall was a ditch, blacker than night because it was so deep. I looked at all of this and examined it carefully. Then I made to go away. The austringer told me to wait and he would recompense me and that no successive ruler [in this land] ever failed to draw closer to God by bringing with him the best of what he had of this present world and casting it down into this narrow defile. So he cut up a lump of meat that he had with him and threw it into this empty space. The eagle swooped down after it, and he said, ‘If she takes it before it falls [to the bottom], there is no [bottom]! But, if she does not, then there is a [bottom there].’ The eagle emerged and came to us carrying the meat in her talons. Inside there was a precious stone, which he gave me—and this is it.” Shahrbarāz took it, a ruby, and handed it over to ‘Abd al-Raḥmān. He looked at it, then returned it to Shahrbarāz, who said, “This is indeed worth more than this town, al-Bāb. I swear by God, I would rather you be in power than the family of

---

199. See note 189.
the Persian emperor. Were I in their power and then they heard news of (the ruby), they would snatch it away from me. I swear by God, nothing will stand in your way as long as you remain true to your word and your great ruler does likewise." 

'Abd al-Rahmān turned to the envoy and said, "What was this rampart like?" He replied that [it was like] the garment this man was wearing. And [Māṭār] said, "And he looked at my garment." 

Māṭār b. Thalj said to 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Rabī'ah; "The man has certainly told the truth! He has been and seen for himself." He replied, "Yes indeed, he has given a description of iron and brass," and he recited "Bring me pieces of iron" right to the end of the verse. 

'Abd al-Rahmān said to Shahrbarāz, "How much was your gift worth?" He replied, "The value of 100,000 in my own country and 3,000,000 or more in these parts."

Al-Wāqidi claimed that Muḥāwiyyah launched a summer campaign this year and penetrated into Byzantine territory at the head of 10,000 Muslims. Some authorities report that the death of Khālid b. al-Walid took place this year.

In [this year] Yazīd b. Muḥāwiyyah and 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān were born. 

During this year 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb led the pilgrimage. His governor of Mecca was 'Attāb b. Asid. 

[2672] Ya’lā b. Umayyah was governor of the Yemen. Those who were his governors in the previous year whom we have already mentioned [remained] in charge of the rest of the Muslim garrison towns.

200. That is, the caliph himself, 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb.
201. See Qur'ān, XVIII:94–97. This is the story of Dhū al-Qarnayn [EI², s.v. "al-Iṣkandar" (Watt)], who keeps out Gog and Magog by building between two mountains a wall made of iron and molten brass. The words sadd and radm used here in the text are both found in this passage in the Qur'ān.
203. The famous fifth Umayyad caliph (65–86/685–705). See EI², s.v. (Gibb).
204. It would seem that 'Attāb b. Asid b. Abī al-Ṭīf b. Umayyah b. 'Abd Shams remained governor of Mecca from its conquest by the Prophet in 8/629 right through to this year, 22. See Ibn Hishām, Sirah, II, 440 (Guillaume, Life, 568), Wāqidi, Maghāzi, III, 889; EI², s.v. (ed.).
205. Ya’lā b. Umayyah/Munyah al-Tamimi died at Sīfīn in 37/657 after twenty-four years as governor in the Yemen. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, XI, 399; Rāzī, San‘ā’, 69–70; Mad‘aj, Yemen, 141 and table 4, 148. See also note 781, below.
During this year 'Umar equalized [the material benefits of] the conquests carried out by the Kufans and Basrans.

Information on ['Umar's Division of the Conquered Lands]

According to al-Sari—Shu'ayb—Sayf—Muḥammad, Ṭalḥah, al-Muhallab, 'Amr and Sa'īd: 'Ammār b. Yāsir remained as governor of al-Kūfah for a whole year and part of another during the caliphate of 'Umar. 'Umar b. Surqah, at that time governor of al-Baṣrah, wrote to 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, indicating to him how large the population of al-Baṣrah was and how little land tax they received and requesting that he add one of the two Māhs or Māsabadhān to them [as a source of land tax].

News of this reached the Kufans, and they asked 'Ammār to write on their behalf to 'Umar, [proposing] that Rāmahurmuz and Īḍāhā become theirs [for the purpose of land tax] to the exclusion of [the Basrans], who did not assist them in any way in [fighting against] these two places and who did not join them until they had already conquered them. But 'Ammār replied that he could do nothing about the whole matter. 'Uṭārid said to him, "Why do you not give us [the revenue from] our immovable booty, you slave with the mutilated ear!" He replied, "Now you abuse my good ear!" and he [refused to] write concerning this matter. He was therefore hated by them. When the Kufans were adamant that they should [continue] the dispute concerning the two (places) with the Basrans, certain people gave evidence to [the Basrans] that Abū Mūsā had granted the people of

---

206. The two Māhs are Nihāwand and Dinawar. See Yāqūt, Muʾjam, V, 48; Le Strange, Lands, 189, 197. Māsabadhān is that part of the Jībāl province due south of Kurdistān. See Le Strange, Lands, 202 and Map 5, opposite 185.


208. A town a little north of Rāmahurmuz in Khūzistān. See Yāqūt, Muʾjam, I, 188–89; Le Strange, Lands, 245 and Map 2, opposite 25.

209. 'Uṭārid b. Ḥājib b. Zurārah b. 'Udas/’Udas, a leader of Banū Tamim. He was a member of the Tamimi delegation to the Prophet in 9/630. See Ṭabarī, I, 1710–11; Ibn Hishām, Sīrah, II, 560–61 (Guillaume, Life, 628); Wāqidi, Maghāzī, III, 975.

210. Arabic ‘la-qad sababta aḥabba udhunayya ilayya. That is, "I don't want to hear any more of this!" 'Ammār had lost an ear at the battle of al-Yamāmah, see EI², s.v. "‘Ammār" (Reckendorf).
Rāmahurmuz and Īdhaj safe-conduct and that the Kufans and the army of al-Nu'mān [b. Muqarrin] had corresponded with them while they were [enjoying this] safe-conduct. 'Umar permitted them to do this to them and for the benefit of the Basrans had his authorization duly witnessed. The Basrans laid claim to certain settlements in Iṣfahān that Abū Mūsā had conquered on this side of Jayy when 'Umar had sent [the Basrans] as reinforcements to [the Kufans] under the command of 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. Ḳtbān. The Kufans said: "You came to us as reinforcements when we had already conquered the area, but we shared the spoils with you. The covenant is ours, the land is ours." 'Umar confirmed that they were right. Then the Basrans who had taken part in the battles and who were at al-Qādisiyyah took up another matter, saying, "Let them give us our share of their main body of cultivated land and that on its periphery in which we participated with them." 'Umar asked them if they would be satisfied with Māh,211 at the same time asking the Kufans if they would approve his granting [the Basrans] one of the two Māhs. 212 They replied that he should do as he thought fitting. So he granted them Māh Dīnār213 with its share for those of them who had taken part in the battles and who were at al-Qādisiyyah as far as the district of al-Baṣrāh and Mihrajāṅqadhaq.214 All this was for those Basrans who took part in the battles and who were at al-Qādisiyyah. Mu'āwiyyah [when he was governor of Syria] was the one who garrisoned Qinnasrin with a military force from the Iraqs that had refused [to serve 'Alī further] in the latter's time.215 Qinnasrin was simply one of the rural districts of Ḥims until Mu'āwiyyah made it into a garrison town and garrisoned it with those who had left al-Kūfah and al-Baṣrāh at that time and he took for them, as their share for the conquests of Iraq, Azerbaijan, Mosul, and al-Bāb, and brought them all together. The population of al-Jazirah and Mosul were at that time floating, mixed with all those of the

211. That is, Nihāwānd, also known as Māh al-Baṣrāh.
212. That is, Nihāwānd and Dinawar. See note 206, above.
213. Māh Dīnār is Nihāwānd. See Yaqūt, Mu'jam, V, 49.
214. Mihrajāṅqadhaq is the second of the two parts of the Jibal province due south of Kurdistān. See Le Strange, Lands, 202 and Map V, opposite 185.
215. Raḥidah is not to be taken here in its later meaning, viz., a term of abuse used by the Sunnis of the Shi'i is.
two areas [al-BAṣrah and al-Kūfah] who had not emigrated [to participate in the conquests]. Al-Bāb, Azerbaijan, al-Jazīrah, and Mosul were conquered by the Kufans.216 When Muʿāwiya h b. Abī SuFyān was appointed governor [of Syria], all this was transferred to those of them who had moved to Syria in the time of 'Alī and to those with whom al-Jazīrah and Mosul were populated who had not emigrated [to participate in the conquests] in the time of 'Alī.

At the time of Muʿāwiya's governorship of Syria the people of Armenia were unbelievers.217 (Muʿāwiya) had made Ḥabīb b. Maslamah commander of al-Bāb, he being at that time in Jurzān.218 He entered into correspondence with the inhabitants of Tiflis and those mountain areas, but then he fought against them until they indicated their obedience [to him] and obtained an agreement from him. After he had corresponded with them, he wrote to them [as follows]:

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. From Ḥabīb b. Maslamah to the people of Tiflis in Jurzān, the land of al-Hurmuz.219 You are at peace. I commend God to you. There is no other god than He. Your envoy, Taflī, has come to us, has brought your message, and has delivered [the gifts] you sent. Taflī has mentioned that, according to your reckoning, we used not to be one community, and indeed we were not thus until God gave us guidance in the form of Muḥammad and strengthened us with Islam after we had been few, lowly, and ignorant. Taflī has mentioned that you desire to be at peace with us, and those who believe with me and I are not averse to this. I send you 'Abd al-

216. Ṭabārī presents the temporal clause [Arabic, wa-lammā waliya Muʿāwiyatu bnu SuFyān], which I have relegated in translation to the following sentence, before the three previous sentences that are explanatory material in parenthesis.

217. Although there had been earlier attacks on Armenia by the Muslim forces, it is clear that the major onslaught, led by Ḥabīb came in 24/645 or 31/652 during the caliphate of 'Uthmān. See Ṭabārī, I, 2808, 2871; Translation, XV, 10–11, 78; Baladhuri, Tutiḥ, 197.

218. Georgia, regarded by Yāqūt as that part of Armenia the chief town of which is Tiflis. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, II, 125; Le Strange, Lands, Map III, opposite 87; Minorsky, Studies, map, 79.

219. That is, the local ruler.
46 The Conquest of Iran

Rahmān b. Jaz' al-Sulami,220 who is one of our most knowledgeable religious and Qur'anic scholars. With him I send my document granting you safe-conduct. If you agree, he will hand it over to you; if you do not, he will "declare war" on you "fairly; God does not love the treacherous."221

[The document:]

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful. This is a document from Habib b. Maslamah to the people of Tiflis in Jurzān, the land of al-Hurmuz, [granting you] safe-conduct for your persons, your possessions, your religious buildings (ṣawāmi'), your places of worship, and your prayers, with the imposition of a small tribute, a whole dinar on every household. We [in turn shall have] your good counsel, your help against God's and our enemy, your hospitality for one night for the passerby, [providing] the permitted food and drink of the People of the Book, and guidance along the way insofar as none of you thereby comes to any harm. If you become Muslims, pray, and pay alms; then we shall [all] be brethren within Islam, and [you will be] our clients. But he who turns his back on God, His apostles, His books, and His partisans, we shall "declare war" on you "fairly; God does not love the treacherous."

'Abd al-Rahmān b. Khālid,222 al-Ḥajjāj,223 and 'Iyād224 were witnesses, and Rabāh225 wrote, "And I call God, His angels, and

220. This scholar remains unidentified, and there is no other mention of him in the text.
221. Qur'ān, VIII:58.
223. An unidentified witness.
224. Both the Leiden and Cairo indexes indicate that this is 'Iyād b. Ghanm al-Fihri, later governor in the Jazirah and Muslim leader in Syria, who died after 31/651. See Tabari, I, 2505, 2865–66; Translation, XIII, 86; Translation, XV, 72–73. Ibn al-Athir (Usd, IV, 164–66), however, and Ibn Sa'd (Tabaqat, IV, 269; VII, 398) insist that 'Iyād died in 20/641.
225. A witness mentioned only here in the text.
those who believe to witness; 'God is sufficient as a witness.'”

In this year [22, November 30, 642–November 19, 643] [2676]
'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb reportedly removed 'Ammār from al-
Kūfah and appointed Abū Mūsā governor. We have, however,
already mentioned above what al-Wāqidi had to say on this
subject.227

The Reason for [the Dismissal of 'Ammār]

I have already mentioned part of the reason for his dismissal,
and [now] I shall report on the remainder. According to al-Sarī—
Shu’ayb—Sayf—those of his shaykhs I have already men-
tioned:228 The people of al-Kūfah, this 'Utārid, and others with
him wrote to 'Umar about 'Ammār, “He is no commander
and cannot cope with the situation in which he finds himself.”
The Kufans put pressure on him, so 'Umar wrote to 'Ammār,
[telling him to] present himself. He set out with a delegation of
Kufans, taking with him [only] those whom he considered to be
his supporters. But they were more against him than those left
behind. He became worried and was asked. “What is worrying
you, Abu al-Yaqūn?” He admitted it was something that he was
not proud of, but he had indeed been so afflicted.229 Now Sa’d
b. Mas‘ūd al-Thaqafi,230 the uncle of al-Mukhtār, and Jarir b.
‘Abdallāh231 were with him, and they spread rumors about him
and told 'Umar things [about him] of which he disapproved. So
'Umar dismissed him and gave him no [other] governorship.

According to al-Sarī—Shu’ayb—Sayf—al-Walid b. Jumay.232

227. See above, note 23.
228. That is, Muḥammad, Ṭalḥah, al-Muhallab, 'Amr, and Sa‘id. See note 4,
above.
229. Arabic, fa-jazi‘a fa-qila la-hu yâ Abâ al-Yaqqân mâ hâdhâ al-jaza‘u
fa-qâla wa-Allâhi mâ uhmidu nafsî ‘alay-hi wa-laqqad utbulitu bi-h.
Mas‘ūd al-Thaqafi, born in the first year of the Hijrah (Tabari, I, 1264;
Translation, VII, 10) and leader of the Alid movement in al-Kūfah in 64/683
[Tabari, II, 510ff.; Translation, XX, 105ff.].
231. Al-Bajāli, died ca. 54/674. See Ibn Hājur, Ḥṣabah, II, 76–77; Tahdhib, II,
73–75; Ibn al-Athir, Usd, I, 279–80; Hill, Termination, 103ff.
232. An unidentified narrator.
Abū al-Ṭufayl: 'Ammār was asked if he was displeased by his dismissal. He replied that he had not in any way been pleased when he was appointed governor, but he was displeased when he was dismissed.

According to al-Sārī—Shu‘ayb—Sayf—Ismā‘īl b. Abī Khālid and Mujālid—al-Shābī: 'Umar asked the Kufans which of their two settlements they liked better, that is, al-Kūfah or al-Madā‘īn. He added, "I am asking you, but I can indeed see in your faces which one of them is preferred." Jarīr replied that the nearer settlement of theirs, [al-Madā‘īn], was closer to the [fertile] Sawād land, whereas the other was [a place, as if] by the sea, of exhausting, intense heat, with mosquitoes. 'Ammār retorted that he was lying, but 'Umar told him he was a bigger liar than [Jarīr]. ('Umar) also asked them what they thought of their commander, 'Ammār. Jarīr answered that he was indeed inadequate and deficient, with no knowledge of management.

According to al-Sārī—Shu‘ayb—Sayf—Zakariyyā b. Siyāh—Hishām b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Thagafi: Sa‘d b. Mas‘ūd said, "You, ['Ammār], have no idea of what [territories] you are governor!" 'Umar asked ['Ammār] of what [territories] he had made him governor. 'Ammār replied "Of al-Ḥira‘ah and its region." ('Umar) said that he had heard of al-Ḥira‘ah from merchants going frequently to and from there. ['Umar] asked of what [else he was governor]. ['Ammār] replied, "Of Babylon and its region." ('Umar) said, "You have heard mention of it in the Qur‘ān!" ['Umar] further asked of what [else he was governor]. "Of al-Madā‘īn and its surrounding areas," ['Ammār] replied. ['Umar] asked him if this was the Ctesiphon of the Sasanian emperor, and he replied that it was. ('Umar) asked...
him of what [else he was governor]. ('Ammār) replied, "Of Mihrajānqadhāq and its region." [Sa’d and his companions] said, "We have already told you that he does not know of what [territories] you have sent him [as governor]. So ('Umar) dismissed ('Ammār). He later summoned him and asked him if he had been displeased when he had dismissed him. ('Ammār) replied that he had been in no way happy when he sent him [as governor], but that he was indeed displeased when he dismissed him. ('Umar) commented, "I knew you were not a governor, but I gave meaning [to the following]: "We wished to show favor to those who were considered weak on earth, make them examples, and make them the inheritors." According to al-Sarī—Shu’ayb—Sayf—Khulayd b. Dhafarah al-Namari—his father with an account similar to this and more: ('Umar) asked ('Ammār) if he was inviting approval of himself because of his knowledge of those with whom he had been dealing since his arrival. He added, "You will stop at no limit, 'Ammār, with the result that [this] puts you in a weak position; indeed, if age comes upon you, you will certainly grow weak, and if you are weak, you will indeed be sorely tested. Then ask God for death." Then ('Umar) turned to the Kufans and asked them whom they wanted. They replied, "Abu Musa." So ('Umar) appointed him their commander after 'Ammār. He remained their governor for a year. But his servant sold fodder and al-Walid b. 'Abd Shams heard [Abū Mūsā] say, "I have never kept company with any people without honoring them. Only my association with the witnesses of al-Bāṣrah has prevented me from calling them liars." If I befriend you, I shall certainly bring you goodness." Al-Walid said, "No one other than you has taken away our land; you will certainly not [continue] as our governor." So he and others with him left [al-Kūfah], saying that they had no need of Abū Mūsā. ('Umar)
asked [them] why. They replied, "He has a servant who deals in the fruits of our land!" So (‘Umar) dismissed him and sent him to al-Baṣrah. He also sent ‘Umar b. Surāqah to al-Jazīrah. He said to the Kufan followers of Abū Mūsā who went with him when he was dismissed, "Do you prefer someone strong and tough or someone weak, but a believer?" But he got no response from them. So (‘Umar) went off on his own to a part of the mosque and went to sleep. Al-Mughirah b. Shu‘bāh came to him and stood watch over him until he woke up. Then he said, "You have acted in this way, Commander of the Faithful, only because of something very serious. Has some disaster overtaken you?" He replied, "What is happening is more disastrous than 100,000 who are not pleased with a commander, when he is not pleased with them." And he went on for some time on this subject. (Al-Kūfah was originally founded for 100,000 troops.) (‘Umar’s) followers came to him and asked him what was on his mind. He told them it was the Kufans whose problem was causing him some distress. ‘Umar repeated his request for advice from them as before, and al-Mughirah gave him his answer. He said, "The weak Muslim’s weakness is not in your interests, nor in those of the other Muslims [as well as his own]. His excellence [by being a Muslim] is [only] in his own interests. The strong, tough man’s strength is in your interests and those of the other Muslims [as well as his own], whereas his toughness works both against him and in his favor." So (‘Umar) sent [al-Mughirah] [as governor] over [the Kufans].

According to al-Sarī—Shu‘ayb—Sayf—Muhammad b. ‘Abdallāh—Sa‘īd b. ‘Amr:"245 ‘Umar, before appointing al-Mughirah governor, asked what his opinion was of making someone governor who was weak, but a Muslim, as opposed to someone strong and tough. Al-Mughirah replied, "The faith of a weak Muslim works [only] in his own interests, whereas his weakness works against your interests. The toughness of a strong, tough man will work in his own interests and his strength in those of the Muslims." (‘Umar) told him he was sending him [as governor to al-Kūfah]. Al-Mughirah was in this

position until 'Umar died, that is something more than two years. When al-Mughīrah was taking his leave [of 'Umar] to go to al-Kūfah, he said to him, "Let the pious trust you and the wicked fear you, Mughīrah." Later 'Umar wanted to send Sa'd [b. Abī Waqqās] as governor in place of al-Mughīrah, but he was killed before he could do this, leaving the recommendation [that Sa'd should become governor]. Now it was 'Umar's practice and habit to require his governors to make the pilgrimage every year; [this was] for the purpose of good management, to isolate them in this way from their subjects and to provide a time for their subjects to complain and an objective that they could thus accomplish.

In this year [22; November 30, 642–November 19, 643] according to some reports, al-Aḥnaf b. Qays attacked Khurāsān and made war on Yazdajird. Sayf, however, reported that al-Aḥnaf moved against Khurāsān in the year 18 [January 12, 639–January 2, 640].

Yazdajird's Journey to Khurāsān and the Reason for It

Historians [ahl al-siyar] differ in the reason [they give] for this and how the whole affair happened. There is Sayf's account of this on the authority of his [previous] authorities. Al-Sari wrote to me on the matter—Shu‘ayb—Sayf—Muḥammad, Ṭalhah, al-Muhallab and 'Amr: Yazdajird b. Shahriyār b. Kisrā, who was at that time ruler of Persia, made for al-Rayy when the forces at Jalūlā'246 were defeated. A single litter that could fit on to the back of his camel was provided for him, so as the journey progressed, he could sleep and he did not need to camp with his army. While he was asleep in his litter, they brought him to a ford. They woke him up so that he might be aware [of what was happening] and not be afraid when the camel forded over, [as he would be] if he were awakened from sleep. But he

---

246. A town about 70 miles east of Sāmarrā, on the route from Baghdad to Hulwān. See Yaqūt, Mu'jam, II, 156; Le Strange, Lands, 62 and Map II, opposite 25. The defeat here referred to is that of the Persians at the hands of the Muslim forces under Sa'd b. Abī Waqqās in 16/637. See Baladhuri, Futūh, 264ff.; Ṭabarî, I, 245ff. [Translation, XIII, 36ff.], Zarrinkūb, "Conquest," 13.
reproached (his men), saying, “You were wrong to do this! If you had left me alone, I would have found out how long this [Islamic] community will last. I saw in a dream Muḥammad and myself speaking together alone in the presence of God. (God) told (Muḥammad) that he would give them 100 years’ power. He asked for more and (God) made it 110 years. (Again Muḥammad) asked for more and (God) made it 120 years. (Again Muḥammad) asked for more and (God) granted it, but then you woke me up. If you had left me alone, I would have found out how long this community will last!”

When he finally reached al-Rayy, where Ābān Jādhawayh was governor, [the latter] seized him and took him prisoner. (Yazdajird) accused him of acting treacherously toward him. He replied, “No, rather you have abandoned your empire, and it has fallen into the hands of someone else. I [only] want to record everything that is mine and nothing more.” He took Yazdajird’s seal, produced some parchment and made some written statements and records of every thing he wanted. Then he placed the seal on them and returned it. Later he approached Sa’d, and [the latter] returned to him everything [listed] in his document. When Ābān Jādhawayh treated Yazdajird in this way, the latter left al-Rayy for Iṣfahān, expressing a hatred for Ābān Jādhawayh as he fled from him and not trusting him. He decided to go to Kirmān, taking his fire247 and intending to install it there. Later he decided to make for Khurāsān. He arrived in Marw248 and settled there, having also brought his fire, for which he erected a building. He set up a cultivated area and built a passage 2 parasangs long from Marw. It was exactly 2 parasangs. He felt secure within himself and secure from approach. From Marw he corresponded with those Persians remaining in those areas not conquered by the Muslims. They expressed their obedience to him, and finally he induced the people of Fārs and followers of

---

247. Arabic simply reads nār, fire. I take this to be some kind of sacred flame used in his practice of Zoroastrianism.
248. A famous town about 240 miles due north of Herat, one of the capitals of the Khurāsān province and standing on the River Murghāb. See Yāqūt, Muʿjam Marw al-Shāhijān, V, 112ff.; Le Strange, Lands, 398ff.; El2, s.v. [Bosworth].
al-Hurmuzān to rebel [against the Muslims], and the people of al-Jibāl and the followers of al-Fayruzān did likewise. This it was that induced 'Umar to permit the Muslims to penetrate farther. The armies of al-Baṣraḥ and al-Kūfah pushed on farther with the result that they decisively conquered the whole area.

Al-Ahnaf left for Khurāsān, took Mihrājānqadḥaq, then left for Iṣfahān, while the Kufans were besieging Jayy. He entered Khurāsān from al-Ṭabasayn249 and took Herat250 by force. He appointed as his deputy there Šuḥār b. Fulān al-‘Abdī,251 then marched on Marw al-Shāhijān. He dispatched to Naysābūr,252 there being no intervening battle, Muṭarrif b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-Shikhkhīr,253 and to Sarakhīs254 al-Ḥārith b. Ḥassān.255 When al-Ahnaf drew near to Marw al-Shāhijān, Yazdajird left it for Marw al-Rūdh256 and remained there, while al-Ahnaf remained

249. For the conquest of Khurāsān, see Balādhūrī, Futūḥ, 403ff. Al-Ahnaf was approaching from the southwest. The dual form, al-Ṭabasayn, is not infrequently used for one of the two towns called Ṭabas, Ṭabas al-Tamr and Ṭabas al-‘Unnāb. The two are about 200 miles apart, al-Tamr in the west, al-‘Unnāb in the southwest of Qūhīstān. Assuming he could march through the Great Desert, more or less as the crow flies, al-Ahnaf would have passed through Ṭabas al-Tamr on his way from Iṣfahān to Herat. See Yāqūt, Mu’jam, IV, 20; Le Strange, Lands, 359ff. and Map 8, opposite 335.

250. The famous town in present-day Afghanistan. The town sits on the River Herat in the southwest of the province of Khurāsān and was chief town of one of its quarters. See Yāqūt, Mu’jam, V, 396–97; Le Strange, Lands, 407–9, 429–31; EI3, s.v. [Freye].

251. That is, from ‘Abd al-Qays. Perhaps his father’s name was Ṣakhr, see the Leväni apparatus criticus, Ṭabarī, I, 2682, note o. He figures as a narrator under the year 17, Ṭabarī, I, 2537, and later sub anno 23, I, 2707, delivering the fiṭḥs to the caliph from Makrān. There is brief mention of Šuḥār b. Ṣakhr in Ibn Ḥajar, Iṣābāh, V, 126.

252. In the west of Khurāsān and a chief town of one of its quarters. See Yāqūt, Mu’jam, V, 331–33; Le Strange, Lands, 382ff. and Map VIII, opposite 335.

253. Al-Ḥarashi. If this is the Baṣrān jurist who died ca. 867/1465, he must have been very young at this time. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, X, 173–74; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamhūrah, 288.

254. A town on the River Herat in Khurāsān, situated about 100 miles east of Naysābūr. See Yāqūt, Mu’jam, III, 208–9; Le Strange, Lands, 395ff. and Map 8, opposite 335.

255. Al-Dhuhli. A Muslim leader who is reported as assuming various military tasks during the conquests. See Ṭabarī, I, 2475, 2477 etc.; Ibn al-Athīr, Usd, I, 323–25; Ibn Ḥajar, Iṣābāh, II, 152–53; Tahdhib, 139.

256. About 150 miles south of Marw on the River Murghāb in Khurāsān. See Yāqūt, Mu’jam, V, 112; Le Strange, Lands, 397ff. and Map VIII, opposite 335.
in Marw al-Shāhijān. While he was in Marw al-Rūdh, Yazdajird wrote to the ruler of the Turks (khaqān)²⁵⁷ asking for reinforcements and to the ruler of Soghdīa²⁵⁸ for the same reason. His two envoys to ruler of the Turks and the ruler of Soghdīa departed, and he wrote also to the ruler of China asking for assistance. Al-ʾĀhnaf, when Kufan reinforcements had joined him under the command of four commanders, ʿAlqamah b. al-ʿNaḍr al-ʿNaḍrī, Ribʿī b. ʿĀmir al-Tamīmī, ʿAbdallāh b. Abī ʿUqayl al-Thaqāfī, and Ibn Umm Ghazāl al-Hamdānī,²⁵⁹ departed from Marw al-Shāhijān, leaving Ḥātim b. al-Nuʿmān al-Bāhili²⁶⁰ as his deputy there. He marched on Marw al-Rūdh. However, when Yazdajird heard of this, he left for Balkh.²⁶¹ Al-ʾĀhnaf stayed in Marw al-Rūdh, sending the Kufans on to Balkh. Al-ʾĀhnaf followed on after them; and the Kufans and Yazdajird met in battle in Balkh, and God defeated the latter, who made for the river at the head of his Persian army and crossed it. Al-ʾĀhnaf joined up with the Kufans, when God had already given them victory. So Balkh was one of the victories of the Kufans.

The combatants of Khurāsān between Naysābūr and Ṭukḥāristān,²⁶² in what used to be the territory of the Persian emperor, followed one after the other to make peace, those who had fled and those who had made fortified positions. Al-ʾĀhnaf returned to Marw al-Rūdh where he remained, having made Ribʿī b. ʿĀmir his deputy in charge of Ṭukḥāristān. It is he

²⁵⁷. For the title khaqān, see EI², s.v. [Boyle].
²⁵⁸. May be taken in the wider sense to cover the area between the rivers Oxus and Jaxartes, of which Bukhārā and Samarqand were the chief towns, or more narrowly the district around Samarqand. See Yāqūt, Muʿjam, III, 409–10; Le Strange, Lands, 460ff. and Map IX, opposite 433.
²⁵⁹. Four Muslims leaders sent in 17/638 by ʿUmar to reinforce al-ʾĀhnaf on the eastern front. See Ṭabarī, I, 2569.
²⁶⁰. A Muslim leader who appears in various military roles later in the text. See Ṭabarī, I, 2886–88 etc.
²⁶¹. Chief town of the fourth quarter of Khurāsān. See Yāqūt, Muʿjam, I, 479–80; Le Strange, Lands, 420ff. and Map VIII, opposite 335.
²⁶². A large district of Khurāsān stretching to the east of Balkh on the south side of the River Oxus. Cf. Yāqūt, Muʿjam, IV, 23; Le Strange, Lands, 426–27 and Map 8, opposite 335.
about whom al-Najāshī recited the following, linking his name with his mother who was a noble Arab:263

Oh, many's the one who is called a young brave who is not really so!
Oh, Rib'i b. Ka's is a real young brave!264

[Standing] tall [above them], when those sitting in the yard of his house have taken their fill of what is left in his bowl, he gives them to drink.

Al-Aḥnaf wrote to 'Umar of the conquest of Khurasān and (')Umar) said, "I wish I had not sent an army there. I wish there were a sea of fire between us."265 'Ali asked him why and he replied, "The people [of Khurasān] will burst forth from it on three occasions and they will be destroyed on the third. I prefer that this should happen to its own people rather than to the Muslims!"

According to al-Sarī—Shu'ayb—Sayf—Abū 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Fazārī—Abū al-Janūb al-Yashkuri266—'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib: When 'Umar heard of the conquest of Khurasān, he said, "I wish there were a sea of fire between us." 'Alī asked him why he was so distressed by its conquest, when it was a joyful occasion. 'Umar said, "Yes, but I..." and so on until the end of (z685) the [preceding] account.

According to al-Sarī—Shu'ayb—Sayf—Īsā b. al-Mughirah267 and a member of Bakr b. Wā'il called al-Wāzi' b. Zayd b. Khulaydah:268 When 'Umar heard of al-Aḥnaf's conquest of the

263. Al-Najashi is Qays b. 'Amr, see Iṣfahānī, Aḥnānī, XII, 73, 76. The meter is āwil.

264. Ka's is not only the name of Rib'i's mother, but, because it means "cup" or "goblet," a pun is intended; he is generous in entertaining his guests with drink.

265. A reference to the Zoroastrian religion and its fire worship practiced in pre-Islamic Iran.

266. Two narrators mentioned only here in the text. Abū al-Janūb 'Uqbah b. 'Alqamah al-Yashkuri has a brief notice in Ibn Ḥajaj, Tahdhib, VII, 147.

267. A narrator mentioned only here in the text and who has only a brief notice in Ibn Ḥajaj, Tahdhib, VIII, 231–32.

268. A narrator mentioned only here in the text. Bakr b. Wā'il is a large tribal confederation of 'Adnān, the northern Arabs. See Ibn Ḥazm, Ḥamadh, 307ff., 469; Kaḥhālah, Mu'jam, I, 93ff.; El², s.v. [Caskel].
two Marws and Balkh, he said; "He is al-Ahnaf! He is the lord of the people of the east called by something other than his name!" 269 Umar wrote to al-Ahnaf as follows, "To continue. On no account go beyond the river, 270 keep to this side. You know how you made an entry into Khurāsān, so keep to this method and victory will continue to be yours. Beware of crossing over and dispersing."

When the envoys of Yazdajird reached the ruler of the Turks and Ghūrak, 271 it was not a straightforward matter to give him assistance until he had actually crossed over the river in defeat to meet them. Then it became so, and the ruler of the Turks gave him assistance—for rulers see it as an obligation to assist one another. He came forward at the head of the Turks, assembled the army of Farghānāh 272 and Soghdia, and marched them out. Yazdajird returned to Khurāsān and crossed over to Balkh, the ruler of the Turks crossing with him. The Kufan army mustered at Marw al-Rūdh under al-Ahnaf, and the polytheists left Balkh and fell upon him there. When al-Ahnaf heard that the ruler of the Turks had crossed the River Balkh with the Soghdians to attack him, he went out at night among his troops to see if he could pick up any useful ideas. As he passed by two men who were cleaning fodder, either straw or barley, one of them was saying to the other, "If only the commander would send us up into this mountain, with the river forming a ditch between us and the enemy, the mountain at our backs to prevent our being approached from behind and the fighting thus being on one front, I would hope that God would give us victory!" So (al-Ahnaf) returned, content at (what he had heard). This was one dark night. In the morning he assembled the army and said, "You are few, whereas your enemy are many. Let them not strike terror into you. 'How often a company that is few in number has overcome a company that is many by God's leave;
God is with those who show patience'. Go from here and up this mountain. Place it at your backs, place the river between you and your enemy, and fight them on one front." They did all this, preparing everything that would give them an advantage, (al-Ahnaf) being at the head of 10,000 Basrans, while there was a similar number of Kufans. The Turks advanced, together with those whom they had collected together, and fell upon (the Muslim forces), attacking them morning and evening and withdrawing at night; this went on for some time while al-Ahnaf sought intelligence of their nocturnal position. After he had discovered this, he went out one night, acting as a scout for his men until he came close to the camp of the ruler of the Turks and halted. At the first light of dawn a Turkish cavalryman came forth, wearing his horsetail and beating his drum. Then he positioned himself where someone of his rank positions himself in relation to the troops. Al-Ahnaf attacked him and the two exchanged spear thrusts. Al-Ahnaf pierced him and killed him, as he recited the following in the rajaz meter:

Every chief has a duty to
dye his spear [with blood] or [to fight until] it break;
We have a leader here who was made to face up to
the sword of Abū Ḥafṣ that remains [intact].

Then he stood where the Turk had stood and took his horsetail. Another Turk came out, did exactly as his colleague had done, then stood near him. Al-Ahnaf attacked him and they exchanged spear thrusts. Al-Ahnaf pierced him and killed him, as he recited the following in the rajaz meter:

The chief takes a high, lofty position,
keeping away herdsmen if they let [their beasts] pasture.

Then he stood where the second Turk had stood and took his horsetail. A third Turk came out, did exactly the same as the other two had done, then stood near [where] the second [had

274. Abū Ḥafṣ is the kunyah of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb.
275. Khullā', herdsmen, is the plural of khālin, see Glossarium, ccxxii. The hemistitch reads, wa-yamnā 'u ʾl-khullāʾa immā arbaʿā. Perhaps "let [their beasts] come to water"?
Al-Ahnaf attacked him and they exchanged spear thrusts. Al-Ahnaf pierced him and killed him, as he recited the following in rajaz meter:

[He ran forward] like al-Shamūs, ready to respond to anything, running at full speed, bad tempered.276

Then al-Ahnaf went off back to camp. Not one of (his troops) knew anything about this until he returned there and prepared himself [for war].

It was in the nature of the Turks that they did not go out [for battle] until three of their cavalrymen had come forward like these, each one beating his drum. Then, after the third one, they would [all] go out [to do battle]. So on that night the Turks went out after the third horseman had done so, and they came across [all three of] them slaughtered. So the ruler of the Turks found this a bad omen and said, "We have been [here] too long and these men have been killed in a situation such as no one has ever been killed before. There can be no good for us in fighting these men. Let us all retire." So their leaders withdrew. When day broke, the Muslims could see nothing, and news came to them that the ruler of the Turks had retired to Balkh. Yazdajird b. Shahriyār b. Kīsrā had originally left the ruler of the Turks in Marv al-Rūdh and departed for Marw al-Shāhijān. Ḥātim b. al-Nuʿmān and his followers fortified their positions against (Yazdajird), but he besieged them, removing his treasures from where they were kept, while the ruler of the Turks was in Balkh waiting for him. The Muslims suggested to al-Ahnaf that they should pursue them, but he told them to remain in their position and leave them alone. When Yazdajird had collected together those of his possessions left in Marw, he did not have enough time to collect them all. He intended to make himself the sole possessor (of the treasures), because they were a large

276. Al-Shamūs is the name of the horse of 'Abdallāh b. 'Āmir al-Qurashi. Of an animal the word means "recalcitrant." See Ibn Manṣūr, Lisān, VI, 113–114; Firuzabādī, Qāmūs, II, 232; Zabīdī, Tāj, XVI, 175; Lane, Lexicon, VIII, 2770. The expression nājizun bi-nājiz originates in the commercial world, meaning, "ready [merchandise] for ready [money]". I translate "ready to respond to anything." For the meaning of mushāriz, "bad tempered," "hostile," "quarrelsome," see Firuzabādī, Qāmūs, II, 185; Zabīdī, Tāj, V, 361.
part of [all] the treasures of the Persians. He also intended to join the ruler of the Turks, and the Persians asked him what he intended to do. He replied that he wanted to join the ruler of the Turks and remain with him or [go] to China. They told him to tread warily, for this was a bad idea, going to a people in their own country, while abandoning his own land and people. [They told him] he should take them back to [the Muslims], so that they could make peace with them. [The Muslims] were completely faithful, men of religion and in control of [the Persians'] land. An enemy ruling over Persians in their own land was a better political arrangement than an enemy ruling over them in his own land, who moreover had no religion, nor would they know how faithful [his people] would be. But he refused [to accept their argument] and they refused [to give in to him]. They told him to leave their treasures alone and they would return them to their own territory and to its ruler. He should not remove them from their land. He [again] refused [to accept their argument]. They told him they would not let him go. They drew on one side and left him alone with his followers. They did battle together and they put him to flight, taking the treasures and assuming complete control over them, abandoning him completely. The [Persian] polytheists wrote to al-Ahnaf, giving him the news, so the Muslims intercepted them, while the polytheists were in Marw resisting (Yazdajird). They fought (Yazdajird) and caught up with him at the rear of the army, rushing him away from his treasures (athgal). He went off to seek refuge, crossed the river to Farghanah and the Turks. (Yazdajird) remained throughout the time of 'Umar corresponding with [the Persians], and they with him, or at least some of them. So the people of Khurāsān rebelled during the time of 'Uthman['s caliphate].

The Persians came to al-Ahnaf and made peace with him, exchanging agreements with him and handing over the treasures and monies [mentioned above]. They gradually returned to their lands and wealth in as good a state as they had been at the time of the Sasanian emperors. It was as if they were [still] under their rule except for the fact that the Muslims were more worthy of their confidence and acted more justly toward them. So they rejoiced in their condition and were the object of envy. [The
The share of the booty that came to the cavalryman in the battle against Yazdajird was like that of the cavalryman at the battle of al-Qādisiyyah.\footnote{277}

When the Khurāsānīs threw off their allegiance in the time of 'Uthmān, Yazdajird went and settled in Marw. When he, together with his followers, and the Khurāsānīs fell into disagreement, he took refuge in a mill. (The Khurāsānīs) found him eating from a field around the mill and killed him, throwing him into the river.

When Yazdajird was killed in Marw—he was on that day in hiding in a mill seeking to reach Kirmān—the Muslims and polytheists took possession of his immovable booty. Al-Aḥnaf got to hear of this and left immediately at the head of his army for Balkh, making for the ruler of the Turks and arranging for the dependents and family of Yazdajird to follow with both Muslims and non-Muslims of the Persians, while the ruler of the Turks and the Turks [remained] in Balkh. When (the ruler of the Turks) heard of what had happened to Yazdajird and of the Muslims’ departure from Marw al-Rūdh with al-Aḥnaf in his direction, he left Balkh and crossed the river. Al-Aḥnaf arrived and remained in Balkh and the Kufans also settled in the four regions (of Khurasan).\footnote{278} Then he returned to Marw al-Rūdh and remained there, writing to 'Umar of the defeat of the ruler of the Turks and Yazdajird. He also sent the fifths to him, and the [official] delegations [from Khurāsān] reached him.

(The same sources) reported as follows. When the ruler of the Turks, together with the dependents of the family of the Persian emperor or those of them who had made their way with Yazdajird to Balkh, had crossed over the river, they met the messenger of Yazdajird, whom he had sent to the ruler of China

\footnote{277. The famous battle that took place in 16/637 and a decisive victory for the Muslim forces over the Persians.}

\footnote{278. I here take the Arabic kuwar to indicate the four divisions of Khurāsān. It is true that they were officially known as arba', the plural of rub', and that these quarters were a later development. My explanation would be that suggesting there were such quarters at this early date is an anachronism and that all that is really meant is that the Kufans settled throughout Khurāsān. For the four quarters of Khurāsān and their chief towns of Balkh, Naysābūr, Marw, and Herat, see Le Strange, Lands, 382–83.}
and with whom he had sent gifts and who was bringing back a reply to his letter from the ruler of China. They asked him what had happened to him. He replied that, when he delivered the letter and the gifts to [the ruler], he had presented him in return with what they could see—and he showed them the present he [was carrying]. [The ruler of China] responded to Yazdajird by writing him the following letter, [but only] after he had addressed [the messenger] as follows. "I know that in truth rulers must give aid to [other] rulers against those who overcome them. So describe these people who drove you out of your land to me. I notice that you mention they are few and you are many. Such a small number will not affect you in this way with your great numbers. They can do this only if they are good and you evil." [The messenger] suggested that he ask him whatever he wanted. So he asked him if they kept to their agreement and he replied that they did. [The ruler] asked what they said to them before they made war on them. [The messenger] replied that they called upon us to choose one of three things: [to accept] their faith—and if we do, they treat us as themselves—or [to pay] tribute and [enter] their protection or to be subjected to open warfare. [The ruler] asked about how obedient they were to their leaders. [The messenger] replied that no one was more obedient to him leading them. [The ruler] asked what they permitted and what they forbade, and [the messenger] told him. He asked if they ever forbade what was permitted to them or permitted what was forbidden them. [When] [the messenger] replied that they did not, [the ruler] remarked that they would never perish until they permitted what was forbidden and forbade what was permitted to them. He then asked about their clothes, and [the messenger] told him. [He asked] about their riding animals, and [the messenger] mentioned their pure Arabian horses and described them [to him]. "What fine horses they are!" exclaimed [the ruler]. [The messenger then] described camels to him, how they kneel down and go forth to carry [loads]. [The ruler's response was that this was the description of long-necked beasts!] [The ruler of China] sent a letter to Yazdajird with [the messenger] as follows. "I am not prevented from dispatching an army to you stretching from Marw to China by my not knowing what is proper for me. But if these people described to me by
your messenger were to try, they could demolish mountains; if nothing were to stand in their way, they would wipe me out, as long as they are as described! Make your peace with them therefore and accept some modus vivendi with them. Do not stir them up, as long as they do not stir you up." Yazdajird and the royal family remained in Farhānah in [formal] agreement with the ruler of the Turks.

When the messenger brought to 'Umar b. al-Khattāb [news of] the conquest and the delegation [other] news, carrying the booty with them on behalf of al-Ĥnaf, ('Umar) assembled the people and addressed them. He also ordered the conquest document to be read out to them. In his own address, he spoke as follows:

God, ever blessed and almighty, has mentioned His Apostle and the guidance He sent with him. He promised, for anyone following Him, immediate and future reward [comprising] the goodness of this world and the next. He said, "He it is who sent His Apostle with the guidance and the true religion that He might make it prevail over any [other] religion, even though the polytheists were averse."279 Praise be to God who has fulfilled His promise and granted His army victory. Yes indeed, God has destroyed the rule of the Magians and disunited them. They do not possess one single span of their territory that can bring harm to a Muslim. Yes indeed, God "has made you heirs to their land, houses, wealth and sons" "in order to see how they behave."280 Yes indeed, the distance between the garrison towns [of al-Kūfah and al-Ĥsrah] and the border areas [of Persia] is now the same as [that between] you and the two towns in the past, now that [our armies] have penetrated into the land. "God brings His command to pass,"281 fulfills His promise right through to the last. So apply yourselves and He will carry out His agreement with you in full and fulfill His promise to you. Do not rebel, lest

---

281. Qur'ān, 65:3.
God substitute others for you. My only fear for this community is that it will be put in danger by you.

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī] reported [as follows]. Then the Khurāsānis from far and near came out in opposition in the time of 'Uthmān b. 'Affān, two years into his caliphate. We shall mention the remainder of the news of their break-away movement in its [proper] place, God willing, together with the killing of Yazdajird.282

'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb led the people on pilgrimage in this year. His governors of the garrison towns then were the same as those in the year 21 [December 10, 641–November 30, 642] except for al-Kūfah and al-Baṣrah. His governor of al-Kūfah and [official] in charge of the police was al-Mughirah b. Shu'bah and his governor of al-Baṣrah was Abū Mūsā al-Ash'ārī.

282. See Ṭabarī, I, 287ff., Translation, XV, 78ff.
The Events of the Year

23
( NOVEMBER 19, 643 – NOVEMBER 7, 644 }

The conquest of Iṣṭakhr\textsuperscript{283} took place in [this year] according to the report of Abū Ma’shar. According to Aḥmad b. Thābit al-Rāzi—someone else—Ishāq b. ʿIsā—Abū Ma’shar: The first [campaign of] Iṣṭakhr and [that of] Hamadhān were in the year 23 [643–644]. Al-Wāqidi made a similar report, whereas Sayf said that the conquest of Iṣṭakhr came after the second [campaign of] Tawwaj.\textsuperscript{284}

The Conquest of Tawwaj\textsuperscript{285}

According to al-Sarī—Shuʿayb—Sayf—Muḥammad, Ṭalḥah, al-Muhallab and 'Amr: The Basran army went forth, those

\textsuperscript{283} The ancient town of Persepolis on the River Pulvar in Fārs province. The district of Iṣṭakhr covered the whole of the northern part of Fārs. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, I, 211–12; Le Strange, Lands, 275ff. and Map 6, opposite 249.

\textsuperscript{284} A commercial town in Fārs on or near the River Shāpūr only about 40 miles from the Gulf coast. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, II, 56–57; Le Strange, Lands, 259–60.

\textsuperscript{285} See Baladhuri, Futūḥ, 386–87; Bal'ami, Chronique, III, 511.
(troops) dispatched to Fārs as commanders there, accompanied
by Sāriyah b. Zunaym,286 and those sent with them beyond,
while the army of Fārs was assembled at Tawwaj. But (the
Basrāns) did not face the army (of Fārs) directly with their own
forces; rather each district commander made for his own com-
mand and the district to which he had been assigned. This
[intelligence] reached the army of Fārs, so they dispersed to their
[different] areas—just as the Muslims themselves had done—to
defend them. This brought about the defeat of the Fārsīs and
the complete dispersal of their forces. The [Fārsī] polytheists
regarded all this as a bad omen and it was as if they were staring
fate in the face. Mujāshi' b. Mas'ūd287 headed for Sābūr288 and
Ardashir Khurrah,289 at the head of his Muslim followers. They
and the army of Fārs met at Tawwaj and fought for a long time.
God brought about the defeat for the Muslims of those [who
fought] at Tawwaj and gave the Muslims authority over them.
They killed them in every conceivable manner, doing with them
whatever they wished. (God) gave (the Muslims) everything in
their camp as booty, and they took possession of it. This was the
last [battle of] Tawwaj; it never had such military strength after
this. The first was that in which the troops of al-'Alā' at the
time of [the battle of] ʿFawṣ were rescued, the battle during
which they fought together.290 The first and last battles rival

286. Al-Kinānī, governor and Muslim military leader active in Fārs. See also Ṭabarī, I, 2569; Ibn al-Athīr, Usd, II, 244; Ibn Ḥajār, Isābah, IV, 96–98.
288. The Persian Shipūr or Bishūpūr, the district of Fārs within the basin of the upper reaches of River Shāpūr. The town is about 40 miles northwest of Tawwaj. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, III, 167–68; Le Strange, Lands, 262 and Map VI, opposite 249.
289. One of the five districts of Fārs, of which the chief town is Shirāz. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, I, 146; Le Strange, Lands, 248 and Map VI, opposite 249.
290. Al-'Alā' was governor of Bahrain under the Prophet and the early caliphs and a participant in the Riddah wars. In 17/638 he took a force from Bahrain over to Fārs, and, although launching a successful raid, his ships were lost and he was cut off and had to be rescued. ʿUmar dismissed him for this unauthorized attack. See Wāqīḍī, Maghāzī, II, 782; Ibn Ḥishām, Sirāḥ, II, 576, 600, 607, Donner, Conquests, 86, 327, Zarrīnkūb, “Conquest,” 21. The battles with the Fārsīs (Ṭabarī, I, 2546ff.) were fought in Tawūs, a place described by Yāqūt (Mu'jam, IV, 8) as being situated in the coastal region of Fārs.
each other [in importance]. Then (the inhabitants of Tawwaj) were summoned [to pay] tribute and [to make] a compact. So they came back and settled. Mujāshi' divided out the fifth of the spoils and sent them [to 'Umar], sending out a delegation [to] him also. Those bringing the good news [of the victory] and the delegations were provided with gifts291 and their needs catered for according to a practice instituted by the Messenger of God.

Al-Sarī—Shu'ayb—Sayf—Muḥammad b. Sūqah292—’Āsim b. Kulayb293—his father: We left with Mujāshi' b. Mas'ūd to attack Tawwaj. We besieged it and fought [their army] for a long time. We conquered it, seized much booty and killed a great number. I was wearing a torn shirt, so I took a needle and thread and began to mend my shirt.294 Then I caught sight of a man among the dead who had on a shirt, so I took it, brought it to some water, beat it between two stones until the dirt was removed, and put it on. When the spoils had been collected together, Mujāshi' got up to address [us]. He praised and extolled God and said, "Men, do not take what is not yours; anyone who steals will bring what he has stolen on the Day of Resurrection. Return [anything you have stolen], be it only a needle!" When I heard this, I took the shirt off and threw it among the fifth parts [of the booty].

The Conquest of Iṣṭakhr

[The source] continued: 'Uthmān b. Abī al-Äs295 made for Iṣṭakhr. He and the army of Iṣṭakhr met at Jūr296 and fought a

291. Arabic, "yujāzūna." It might mean "were given sufficient water."
292. An unidentified narrator.
294. For these last two sentences the Arabic reads, "fa-lammā iftatahā-hā ... fa-akhadhtu." I have done away with the temporal clause in translation.
296. The earlier name for Fīrūzābād, the chief town of the district of Ardashīr Khurrah. See Yaqūt, Mu'jam, II, 181–82; Le Strange, Lands, 255 and Map VI, opposite 249.
long battle. Then God granted them Jūr as a conquest, and the Muslims [also] conquered Iṣṭakhr, having killed a great many of [the enemy] and taken what they wanted, though some [of the enemy] fled. Then 'Uthmān called upon the people to [pay] tribute and to [make] a compact. They therefore sent messages to him, and he to them. Their religious leader²⁹⁷ and all those who had fled or left responded favorably to his [call]. They gradually came back and yielded to [the payment of] tribute. Now when the enemy fled, 'Uthmān collected together all the booty God had granted them and took out a fifth, sending it to 'Umar, and distributing four-fifths of the booty among the army. They abstained from plundering and delivered up what was in their care, considering this lower world to be of little importance. 'Uthmān mustered them to him and rose to speak. He told them that things would continue to advance and that everyone would remain safe and sound from anything distasteful as long as they did not take what was not theirs. If they did, they would experience something unpleasant, and the much they might have had then would not go as far as the little they had now.

According to al-Sarī—Shu‘ayb—Sayf—Abū Sufyān²⁹⁸—al-Hasan: ’Uthmān b. Abī al-‘Āṣ said on the day Iṣṭakhr [was conquered], “When God wishes a people to prosper, He restrains them and increases their trustworthiness. Hold on to it, for the first thing you lose of your faith is trustworthiness. Once you do lose it, every day something new will be lost to you.”

[A Persian called] Shahrak²⁹⁹ threw off [his allegiance] at the end of ’Umar’s caliphate or at the beginning of ’Uthmān’s. He roused up the people of Fārs, calling upon them to break [the peace agreement]. So ’Uthmān b. Abī al-‘Āṣ was dispatched against him for a second time, accompanied by reinforcements under the command of ’Ubaydallāh b. Ma’mar³⁰⁰ and Shibl b.

²⁹⁷. Hirbadh, actually a functionary of the Zoroastrian fire temple. See Christensen, L’Iran, 144; Morony, Iraq, 331.
²⁹⁸. An unidentified narrator.
Ma'bad al-Bajali.\textsuperscript{301} (The Muslim forces and the Fārsīs) met in battle in Fārs. On the battlefield 3 parasangs away from one of their settlements called Rishahr\textsuperscript{302} and 12 from their headquarters, Shahrek said to his son, "Son, where will our lunch be, here or in Rishahr?" He replied, "Father, if (the Fārsīs) leave us alone, our lunch will be neither here, nor in Rishahr! It can only be at home.\textsuperscript{303} But I certainly do not think they will leave us alone." The two were still talking when the Muslims launched their attack. They fought together vehemently. Shahrek and his son were both killed in the battle and God caused great slaughter, al-Hakam b. [Abi] al-ʿĀṣ b. Bishr b. Duhaman,\textsuperscript{304} the brother of ʿUthmān, being entrusted with the killing of Shahrek.

It was Abū Maʿshār who reported that the first [campaign] for Fārs and the last for Iṣṭakhr took place in the year 28 [September 25, 648–September 14, 649]. He also said that the last [campaign] for Fārs and [that of] Jūr took place in the year 29 [September 14, 649–September 4, 650]. This was also according to Ahmad b. Thabit al-Rāzi—someone who heard Iṣḥāq b. `Isa mention this [same report]—Abū Maʿshār.

According to ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAbd b. Shabbawayh al-Marwazi\textsuperscript{305}—his father—Sulaymān b. Śāliḥ\textsuperscript{306}—ʿUbaydallāh\textsuperscript{307}—

\textsuperscript{301} A Muslim military leader, possibly a Muzani rather than a Bajali. See Ibn al-Athir, \textit{Usd}, II, 385.

\textsuperscript{302} There are two places with this name in Fārs. One near Būshahr [Bushire], the other in the north of the province, just south of the River Tāb. It is impossible to know for sure which is meant here. Yaqūt [\textit{Mujām}, III, 112–13], however, mentions only the latter and recounts the story of the death of Shahrek, whom he calls Suhrak. Cf. Le Strange, \textit{Lands}, 261, 271 and Map 6, opposite 249.

\textsuperscript{303} Arabic, \textit{fa-qāla yā abati in tarakū-nā fa-lā yakūnu ghadāʿu-nā hāhunā wa-lā bi-Rishhrah wa-lā yakūnāna ilā fi al-manzil.


\textsuperscript{305} An unidentified narrator.


\textsuperscript{307} ʿUbaydallāh is impossible to identify. ʿUbayd, rather than the ʿAbd of the Leiden text is from the Cairo edition and the Leiden Addenda. It must be
'Ubaydallah b. Sulaymân:308 'Uthmân b. Abî al-‘Âs was sent to Bahrain, so he dispatched his brother, al-Ḥakam b. Abî al-‘Âs at the head of 2,000 [men] to Tawjaj. The Persian emperor had already fled from al-Madâ’ in and had reached Jûr in Fârs.

(The source) continued: According to Ziyâd, the client of al-Ḥakam b. Abî al-‘Âs—al-Ḥakam b. Abî al-‘Âs: Shahrak came at me. 'Ubayd309 added that he had been sent by the Persian emperor. Al-Ḥakam continued: He came up against me at the head of his troops. Then they came down a mountain road, having donned their armor. I was afraid that my men would be blinded [by the reflection of the sun off their armor], so I had the order shouted out that all those wearing a turban should wrap it over their eyes and all those not wearing a turban should close their eyes. I called out that they should dismount, and when he saw this, Shahrak did the same. Then I called out that [my men] should mount, and we stationed ourselves in ranks against [Shahrak’s men]. (The latter) also mounted and I put al-Jârûd al-‘Abdi310 in command of the right wing and Abû Ṣufrah of the left, that is, the father of al-Muḥallab. (The enemy) attacked the Muslims, but [the latter] put them to flight; I could not hear a single sound from them. Al-Jârûd informed me that the army had disappeared. But I replied that he would see what would happen. Their horses soon returned, riderless, whereas the Muslims were pursuing (the enemy) and killing them. Heads were scattered around in front of me. Now I had with me one of their rulers, called al-Muka’bir,311 who had deserted the emperor and joined me. I was brought a huge head, and al-Muka’bir told me it was that of al-Azdahâq, meaning


309. That is, the same authority as the 'Ubaydallah b. Sulaymân above in the text; see preceding note.

310. That is, Abû al-Mundhir al-Jârûd b. 'Amr b. Ḥanash b. al-Mu‘allâ al-‘Abdi was a convert from Christianity and a leader of Abd al-Qays. Ibn Ḥajar, Isâbâh, II, 51, says he died in 21/642, or at Nihâwand, or in 'Uthmân’s caliphate. See also Ibn al-Athîr, Usd, II, 260–61; Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhîb, II, 53–54.

311. Al-Muka’bir was Azâdh Furûz b. Jushnas. See Justi, Namenbuch, 53.
Finally they were besieged in the town of Säbür and (al-Ḥakam) made peace with them. Their ruler was Ādharbiyān and al-Ḥakam asked his assistance in the fight against the army of Iṣṭakhr. [At this point] ‘Umar died and ‘Uthmān sent ‘Ubaydallāh b. Ma‘mar in place of (al-Ḥakam) [as commander]. ‘Ubaydallāh heard that Ādharbiyān was intending to betray them, so he told him he wanted him to prepare some food for his men and slaughter a head of cattle for them, putting its bones on the bowl next to ['Ubaydallāh]. [The latter further] told him that he wanted to suck out the marrow from the bones. (Ādharbiyān) did this and ('Ubaydallāh)—one of the strongest of all men—took hold of a bone that could be chopped up only by means of an axe and broke it in his hand to suck out the marrow. The ruler, (Ādharbiyān), got up, seized his foot and said, "This is the position of one seeking refuge!" So ('Ubaydallāh) granted him a [peace] agreement. 'Ubaydallāh was wounded by a mangonel, but [before he died] predicted to them that they would conquer this town, God willing. [He also urged them] to kill [the enemy] there for a while for his sake. [The Muslims] did this and killed many men.

‘Uthmān b. Abī al-'Āṣ had joined al-Ḥakam, after he had defeated Shahrak, and he wrote to ‘Umar informing him that there was a breach between him and al-Kūfah and that he was afraid that the enemy would attack him through it. The lord of al-Kūfah wrote a similar letter that there was a breach between him and such and such a place. The two letters reached ['Umar] at the same time, so he dispatched Abū Mūsā at the head of 700 [men] and settled them in al- Başrah.

The Conquest of Fasā and Darābjird

According to al-Sarī—Shu‘ayb—Sayf—Muḥammad, Ṭalḥah, al-Muhallab and 'Amr: Sāriyah b. Zunaym made in the direction

312. In Persian mythology Azhd Dahāk was the tyrant who overthrew Jamshīd and ruled for 1,000 years. He was the personification of evil. See CHI, III, especially pp. 426–27.
313. For Ādharbiyān, see Justi, Namenbuch, 42, Arzanbān.
314. Darābjird is the easternmost district of Fās, and the chief town has the same name. Fasā is a town in the district less than 60 miles west of the town of
of Fasā and Darābjird and finally reached the camp of their [army]. He positioned himself against them and besieged them for some time. They then sought reinforcements, themselves rallying together, and the Kurds of Fārs joined them. The Muslims were unexpectedly faced with a serious situation [in the form of] a huge army. On the very eve [of these events], 'Umar saw in a dream [the Muslims'] battle and the [large] number [of enemy forces] at a particular hour of the day. The next day he gave the call for congregational prayers. When the hour arrived that he had noted in his dream, he came out to the [people]. The Muslims had been shown to him in a desert area; if they remained there, they would be surrounded. If they retreated to a mountain behind them, they could be attacked only on one front. (Umar) then stood up and told his people that he had seen these two armies and described their situation. He then declared, "[To] the mountain, [to] the mountain, Sāriyah!" Turning to the [people], he said, "God has armies; perhaps one of them will bring them the message [of my dream]!" When this particular hour did actually arrive on the day, Sāriyah and the Muslims all agreed to make for the mountain. This they did and fought the enemy on one front [only]. God routed [the enemy] for [the Muslims] and they wrote to 'Umar [informing] him of all this, of their capture of the region, of the call of its people [to accept an agreement] and their [consequent] pacification.

Al-Sarī—Shu'ayb—Sayf—Abū 'Umar Dithār b. Abī Shabib—Abū 'Uthmān and Abū 'Amr b. al-'Ala—a member of B. Māzin—Umar sent Sāriyah b. Zunaym al-Du'ali to Fasā and Darābjird. He besieged [the inhabitants], but they later prepared themselves for war and sought him out in the desert

---

315. An unidentified narrator.
316. Al-Nahdi, famous figure in early Islam who died about 100/718. See Ibn Hajar, Tahdhib, VI, 277ff.
area [where he was], outnumbering him and coming against him on every side. 'Umar proclaimed, as he gave the address one Friday, "[To] the mountain, [to] the mountain, Sāriyah b. Zunaym!" When that day came, the Muslims had a mountain to one side; if they took refuge in it, they could be attacked only on one front. So they did so. Then [the Muslims] fought them and defeated them. (Sāriyah) took the spoils from them, including a casket containing a precious stone. He asked the Muslims' permission to hand it over to 'Umar as a gift and they agreed, so he sent it off with a man who also [announced news of] the conquest. [Now the envoys and delegations were given gifts and [all] their needs were catered for.] Sāriyah said to [the man], "Borrow what will enable you to reach ['Umar] and what you can leave behind for your family against the gift you [will get from 'Umar]." So the man arrived in al-Baṣrah and did this. Then he left [al-Baṣrah] and came to 'Umar [in Medina]. He found him feeding the people carrying the stick that he used to drive his camel. [The messenger] went toward him, and he turned toward him with [the stick] and told him to sit down. So he sat down and when the people had eaten, 'Umar went off. [The messenger] got up and followed him, so 'Umar thought he was somebody who had not had his fill. He told him, when he had finally got to the door of his house, to come in, already having ordered the baker to take the food tray to where the baking was done for the Muslims. So when he sat down in the house, some lunch was brought for him, bread, olive oil, and coarsely ground salt, and put down. ('Umar) asked [his wife] whether she would come out and eat [with them]. She replied, "I can hear the voice of a man!" He said, "Yes, indeed," to which she replied, "Had you wanted me to show myself off in front of men, you would have bought me another dress!" He said, "Are you not pleased that people say, 'Umm Kulthūm is the daughter of 'Alī and the wife of 'Umar!'" She replied, "A lot of good that does me!" Then 'Umar told the man to come near and eat. "If she were in a good mood, [the food] would be better than what you can see!" So they both ate [together], and when he had finished, the messenger of Sāriyah b. Zunaym exclaimed, "O Commander of the Faithful!" He replied that he was very welcome. He then brought him close until their knees were
touching and asked him about the Muslims [in Fārs], then about Sāriyah b. Zunaym. He gave ['Umar] the information. Then he told him of the story of the casket, but ['Umar] took one look at it and shouted at him, “No, I'll give you nothing until you return to this army and make a [fair] distribution among them.” And he dismissed him. But he told the Commander of the Faithful, that he had exhausted his camels and borrowed against a gift from him. He asked him to give what would satisfy him. He would not leave ['Umar] alone until he exchanged his own camel for one of the camels given as alms, and he took his camel and put it with the alms camels. The messenger set off back, an object of anger and denied any gift. He came to al-Baṣrah and [onward to the army and finally] carried out 'Umar's order. [While he was in Medina], people asked him about Sāriyah, about the conquest and whether they had heard anything on the day of the battle. He replied that they had heard, “[To] the mountain, Sāriyah.” [He added] that they were almost done for, so they took refuge on it and God granted them the conquest.

Al-Sarī—Shu'ayb—Sayf—al-Mujālid—al-Sha'bi gave an account similar to that of 'Amr.

The Conquest of Kirmān

According to al-Sarī—Shu'ayb—Sayf—Muḥammad, Ṭalḥah, al-Muhallab and 'Amr: Suhayl b. 'Adī made for Kirmān and was joined by 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Itbān. In charge of the vanguard of Suhayl b. 'Adī was al-Nusayr b. 'Amr al-Ilijī.321 Now the Kirmānis had massed against (Suhayl), they having sought assistance in the [region of] the Qufs.322 They fought [the Muslims] just within their own territory, but God scattered them. [The Muslims] seized the road against them and al-Nusayr killed the [local] governor (marzbān). Suhayl advanced along

319. Arabic, là wa-lā karaṣmata.
320. See Balādhuri, Futūḥ, especially 391–92, in which Suhayl b. 'Adī does not feature; 'Alī, Chronique, III, 316–17.
321. An unidentified military leader.
322. An extensive mountain area to the southeast of Jīraft [see next note]. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, IV, 380–82; Le Strange, Lands, 317 and Map VI, opposite 249; EI2, s.v. “Kūf” (Bosworth).
what is today the settlement road as far as Jīraft, while 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh [came] from the desert region of Shīr. They seized what camels and ewes they wished, putting a value on the camels and sheep and dividing them up among themselves according to the prices [they would fetch], because the Bactrians were bigger than the Arabians and they did not want to value [them] too highly. They wrote to 'Umar and he replied to them that the Arabian could be valued only according to the amount of meat, [the Bactrian] being [treated] in the same way. [He added that], if they were of the opinion that the Bactrians had more meat, then they should value them more highly, for [prices] can only be in accordance with value.

According to al-Madā'īnī—'Ali b. Mujāhid—Hanbal b. Abī Haridah, judge of Qūhīstān—the governor of Qūhīstān: 'Abdallāh b. Budayl b. Warqā' al-Khuzā'ī conquered Kirmān during the caliphate of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb. He then went on to al-Ṭabasayn from Kirmān, then came to 'Umar. He said that he had conquered al-Ṭabasayn and asked that it be granted to him as a land concession. [Umar] was willing to do this, but was told it was an important district. He therefore did not grant it to [Abdallāh] as a land concession. It is [in fact] the gateway [from Kirmān] to Khurāsān.

323. I take the Arabic qurā here to mean the settlements of the Kirmānīs and translate accordingly. There might, however, be a place named al-Qurā, in which case the translation would need amendment to “Suhayl advanced along what is today the road to al-Qurā as far as Jīraft.” There is no reference to such a toponym in the geographical sources at my disposal. Jīraft is spelled Jiruft by Le Strange. The town is situated south of the town of Kirmān, and its district was the whole of southern Kirmān province. See Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, II, 198; Le Strange, Lands, 314ff. and Map VI, opposite 249.

324. An unidentified place.

325. That is, instead of the usual division of the animals as spoils by numbers.


327. Hanbal b. Abī Haridah is unidentified. Qūhīstān is the province to the southwest and west of Khurāsān. See Le Strange, Lands, 352ff. and Map VIII, opposite 335.

328. Ibn Budayl must in fact have been only ten years old in the year 23; see note 22, above.

329. Arabic verb aqṭa‘a; see El², s.v. “Iktā‘” (Cahen). For al-Ṭabasayn, see note 249, above.
The Events of the Year 23

The Conquest of Sijistān330

[The same sources] reported as follows: ʿĀṣim b. ʿAmr331 made for Sijistān and was joined by ʿAbdallāh b. ʿUmayr.332 The people of Sijistān met them, and they joined battle just within their own territory. [The Muslims] defeated them, then pursued them and besieged them in Zaranj,333 crossing through the region of Sijistān at will. [The Sijistānis] then sought a peace treaty covering Zaranj and [all] the lands [the Muslims] had taken. This they were granted. [The Muslims] also stipulated in the peace treaty they made [with the Sijistānis] that the desert regions of [Sijistān] should be out of bounds [to the Muslims]. When the latter went out anywhere, they would warn each other for fear they encroach on any of [these desert regions] and so break the [peace agreement]. So the Sijistānis paid the land tax and the Muslims granted [them what they had requested].334

[The districts] of Sijistān were greater and spread further afield than [those of] Khurāsān. [The Muslims] made war [there] against Kandahar,335 the Turks, and many [different] communities. [Sijistān] covered the whole area between Sind and the river of Balkh.336 It remained the greater of the two provinces, the more difficult and larger in terms of numbers and fighting men of the

---

330. For the conquest, see Balādhurī, Futūḥ, 392ff.; Balʿamī, Chronique, III, 517ff. Sijistān is the province to the south of Khurāsān. See Yāqūt, Muʿjam, III, 1902; Le Strange, Lands, 334ff. and Maps VII and VIII.
331. Al-ʿTamīmī, a Muslim military leader renowned for his courage, the brother of al-Qaʿāʾ. See Tabari, I, 243ff. etc.
332. An unidentified narrator.
333. The capital of Sijistān, E of Lake Zarah. Cf. Yāqūt, Muʿjam, III, 158; Le Strange, Lands, 335ff. and Maps VII and VIII. Cf. also Bosworth, Sistān and map, in the district of al-Rukkhkhar.
334. This sentence and the first two of the following paragraph read in Arabic, fa-tamma ahlu Sijistānā ʿalā al-kharāji wa-al-Muslimīna ʿalā al-ʿaqā fa-kānat Sijistānu aʿzama min Khurāsānā wa-abʿada furūjan yuqātilūna al-Qandahār. The translation might therefore be, “So the Sijistānis paid the land tax, while the Muslims on stipends [the districts] of Sijistān were greater and spread further afield than [those of] Khurāsān, were making war on Kandahar, . . .”
335. Arabic al-Qandahār, east of Zaranj. See Yāqūt, Muʿjam, IV, 402–3; Le Strange, Lands, 347 and Map VIII, opposite 335; Bosworth, Sistān, map.
336. Something of an exaggeration, as a glance at the map in the CHIR, 60–61, shows! “The river of Balkh” must be the Oxus, which is in fact north of the town.
two frontier districts until Mu‘awiya’s time. At that time the ruler (shāh) fled from his brother, who was called Zunbil,337 to an area called Āmul,338 and (he and his followers) paid allegiance to Salm b. Ziyād,339 at that time governor of Sijistān. [The latter] was pleased with this [development], made a pact with [the ruler and his followers], and allowed them to settle in this area. He wrote to Mu‘awiya about this, indicating that it had been conquered. But Mu‘awiya replied that his cousin might be pleased, but that he was not and that it was not indeed proper that [his cousin] should be pleased. Mu‘awiya was asked why this was and replied it was because the area between Āmul and Zaranj was where there were difficulties and trouble. These were people who were wily and treacherous, so there would be discord in future. The very least they would do would be to take over the whole region of Āmul. But Ibn Ziyād concluded an agreement with them. After Mu‘awiya’s death when there was civil war, the ruler rebelled and conquered Āmul. Zunbil was afraid of the ruler, so he took refuge from him in a particular place in which he remains to this day. But he did not take kindly to this, when the people just ignored him, and he began to covet Zaranj. So he attacked [the town] and besieged [its inhabitants] until reinforcements arrived from al-Baṣrah. Zunbil and all those who came with him and settled in this area became “a bone in the throat” that has remained unremoved to this day. This region had been subdued until Mu‘awiya died.

338. This place must be in or near Sijistān and cannot be either the Āmul in Tabaristān or that between Marw and Bukhārā on the Oxus. Perhaps Kābul to the northeast of Sijistān is meant. See Baladhuri, Futūḥ, 397 and Addenda, DCXXIII.
339. Salm, according to Tabari elsewhere (Tabari, II, 391), was appointed governor of Sijistān in 61/680 by Yazid b. Mu‘awiya (reigned 60–64/680–683), after Mu‘awiya’s death. Yazid too would have been Salm’s cousin, whereas Mu‘awiya would have been his uncle. It seems we should read Yazid throughout this passage rather than Mu‘awiya. Another possible explanation is that Salm’s brother, ‘Abbād, was appointed governor of Sijistān by Mu‘awiya about the year 59/679 (Tabari, II, 189), and perhaps he is meant rather than Salm. See also Bosworth, Sistān, 44–45.
The Events of the Year 23

The Conquest of Makrān

(The same sources) reported as follows: Al-Ḥakam b. 'Amr al-Taghlibi1 made for Makrān and finally arrived there. He was joined by Shīhab b. al-Mukhāriq b. Shīhab2 and reinforced by Suhayl b. 'Adi and 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Ibān themselves. They came to a point just this side of the river3 where the Makrān army had assembled, halted on its bank, and made camp. Rāsil, their ruler,4 had the ruler of Sind cross over toward the Muslims, and he drew near with [his men], facing the Muslims. So they met and fought together at a place on the Makrān side, some days' journey from the river, after the advanced party of (the Makrān army) had arrived and camped there to allow the rest to catch up. God defeated Rāsil and took spoils from him. He permitted the Muslims to despoil his camp. In the battle they killed many and pursued (the remainder), killing them off for some days until they finally reached the river. Then (the Muslims) returned and remained in Makrān. Al-Ḥakam wrote to 'Umar of the conquest and sent the fifths with Suhār al-'Abdi, also asking (‘Umar's) instruction concerning the elephants [that they had captured]. Suhār brought ‘Umar the news and the spoils and ‘Umar asked him about Makrān, [for] no one came to him without his enquiring of him about the area from which he was coming. He replied, "Commander of the Faithful, it is a land whose plains are mountains (jabal); whose water is scarce (washāl); whose [only] fruit is poor quality dates (dagal); whose enemies are heroes (batal); whose prosperity is little (qalil); whose evil is long-lasting (tawil); what is much there is little; what is little there is nothing; as for what lies beyond, it is even worse!" "Are you a rhymed prose reciter or someone

340. Brief mention is made of Makrān in Balādhuri, Futūh, 433ff.; Bal'ami, Chronique, III, 518. Makrān or Mukrān is the large coastal province, mainly arid and economically poor, situated between Kirmān in the west and Sind in the east. See Yāqūt, Mu'jam, V, 179-80; Le Strange, Lands, 329ff. and Map VII, opposite 323.

341. An unidentified military leader.

342. An unidentified military leader.

343. It is not clear which river is here meant, but it is likely it is the Indus.

344. For Rāsil b. Basāyah, see Balādhuri, Futūh, 438; Lambrick, Sind, 158-59; Fatīnamah, 118-19, 124-26.
The Conquest of Iran

bringing [accurate] information?!” retorted 'Umar.345 He said he was really bringing [accurate] information, so 'Umar insisted that not one of his armies should attack (Makrân), as long as he remained in authority. He wrote to al-Ḥakâm b. 'Amr and Šuḥār, [forbidding] any of their armies from passing beyond Makrân. [He ordered them] to restrict themselves to (territory) on this side of the river and al-Ḥakâm to sell the elephants within Muslim territory and distribute the price obtained among all those to whom God had granted the booty of Makrân.

Al-Ḥakâm b. 'Amr composed the following on this subject:346

Without boasting, those whose provisions were exhausted had their fill of booty brought to them from Mukkūrān.347 It came to them after total exhaustion and effort, when there was no food to cook during the winter. The army can place no blame on what I did; nor can my sword or my lance tip be blamed, On the morn when I had their diverse troops348 pushed back into extensive Sind and the neighboring regions. We had a body of troops, in what we wanted obedient, not allowing their [horses’] bridles to be slack.349 Were it not for my Commander’s veto,350 we would have passed over to [those] ample[-bodied] whores!351

Bayrūdīh in al-Ahwāz352

[The same sources] report: When the [Muslim] cavalry dispersed throughout the various districts, a large force of Kurds and

---

345. As the Arabic terms given in the text indicate, Šuḥār gave 'Umar his description of Makrân in rhymed prose.
346. The meter of the poem is wāfīr.
347. A variant spelling of Makrân used to fit the metre of the poem.
348. It should be recalled that the forces opposing the Muslims were a mixture of Makrânīs and Sindīs.
349. That is, they kept their horses and, by implication, themselves under complete control.
350. A reference to 'Umar’s express order that the Muslims should penetrate no farther than Makrân.
351. Arabic, al-bududī 'l-zawānī, that is, feminine plural, hence the translation. It is a reference to Sind where perhaps the women had such a reputation.
352. A town in the northwest of Khūzistān, north of al-Ahwāz, variously spelled Bayrūd by Yāqūt (Mu’jam, I, 526) and Bayrūt and Birūd by Le Strange
others assembled in Bayrudh. Now 'Umar had already ordered Abū Mūsā, when the [Muslim] armies had left for the outlying areas, to march out to [the areas of] those in compact with al- Başrah, so that the Muslims could not be attacked in the rear. ['Umar] was also afraid that some of his armies might be completely surrounded, or others cut off, or left behind. What ['Umar] was afraid of happened with the assembly of the army of Bayrudh, when Abū Mūsā had been slow [to act] until they had actually mustered. He then marched out, finally stopping in Ramadān in Bayrudh [to face] the army that had collected there. They met in battle between Nahr Tīrā353 and Manādhir,354 when the powerful Persian and Kurdish troops had all come together there, with the purpose of laying traps for the Muslims and effecting a breach in their ranks—[the former coalition] never doubting [that at least] one of the two eventualities [would come to pass]. Al-Muhājir b. Ziyād,355 having perfumed himself and expressed his willingness to die, rose and said to Abū Mūsā, “Get everyone who is fasting to swear that he will return [from the battle] and break his fast.” So [al-Muhājir’s] brother returned with others and carried out the provision of the oath. By this he intended simply to distract his brother away from him so that he would not prevent him from exposing himself to death. (Al-Muhājir) advanced and fought until he was killed. God weakened the polytheists, and reduced to a small number and humiliated, they fortified themselves. (Al-Muhājir’s) brother, al-Rabi‘,356 arrived and, his grief intense, exclaimed [to himself], “O you addicted to this lower world!” Abū Mūsā felt compassion for al-Rabi‘ because of the effect of his brother’s tragic death. So he left him behind at the head of an army in authority over [the habitants]. Abū Mūsā [himself] left for Iṣfahān, where he found

355. He has a brief entry in Ibn al- Athir, Usd, IV, 423.
356. He was later governor of Sijistān. See Ibn al- Athir, Usd, II, 164.
the Kufan armies besieging Jayy. Then he made off for al-Baṣrah after the victory of the [Muslim] troops and when God had given victory to al-Rabi' b. Ziyād over the army of Bayrūd and [Abū Mūsā] had taken the captives that they had. Abū Mūsā chose some of them for whom there would be a ransom, as a ransom was more profitable to the Muslims than [holding captive] their prominent leaders and their value [in themselves]. He sent delegations and the fifths [to 'Umar].

A man of 'Anazah stood up and asked him to send him in the delegation, but [Abū Mūsā] refused. But [the man] left [nevertheless], charging [Abū Mūsā] falsely, and 'Umar asked [Abū Mūsā] to present himself. ('Umar) brought them together, finding that Abū Mūsā had an excuse except in the matter of his servant. He lessened his authority, but sent him back to his post. But the other he charged with unrighteousness and ordered him not to do such a thing again.

Al-Sari—Shu'ayb—Sayf—Muḥammad, Ṭalḥah, al-Muhallab and 'Amr: When Abū Mūsā returned from Isfahan after the [Muslim] armies had gone out into the various provinces and al-Rabi' had defeated the army of Bayrūd and [Abū Mūsā] had collected together the captives and their possessions, [the latter] came out next morning to sixty young sons of village headmen, whom he had selected and sent them back in return [for their ransom]. He sent news of the conquest to 'Umar, choosing a delegation [to take it]. A 'Anazi came to him and asked him to write down his name [for inclusion] in the delegation. [Abū Mūsā] replied that he had already registered [names of] those who were more worthy [of participation in the delegation] than he was. So [the 'Anazi] withdrew in anger. Abū Mūsā wrote to 'Umar about the matter of a 'Anazi called Dabbah b. Miḥṣan—and he told him all about him. When the letter [brought by] the delegation [with the news of] the

357. This in all probability refers to Banū 'Anazah b. Asad, a large tribal group in central Arabia. See Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 294; Caskel, Gamharat, I, Table 172, Ḳaḥḥālah, Mu'jam, III, 846–47; EI², s.v. [Graf].
358. A reference to the slave girl, 'Aqilah, mentioned, page 81, below.
359. The text has diḥqān. See EI², s.v. [Lambton]. For this anecdote, see Ṭanṭawi, Akhbār, 179ff.
360. The text at last gives us the name of this 'Anazi bedouin.
The Events of the Year 23

conquest reached 'Umar, the 'Anazi arrived. He came to 'Umar and greeted him. "Who are you?" ('Umar asked; and the ('Anazi) told him. ('Umar) told him there was no welcome for him there, to which he replied, "A welcome comes from God! And there is certainly no family [here]!" He returned to ('Umar) on three occasions, ('Umar) repeating what he had said to him, and (he) giving him the same response. Finally on the fourth day, he entered and ('Umar) said, "What are you accusing your commander, [Abū Mūsā], of?" He replied that he had chosen sixty young sons of landowners for himself, and he also had a slave girl called 'Aqilah who was given a bowl of food for lunch and supper. "None of us can do this and he also has two measures [of grain] and two seals," (the 'Anazi) added. He further, [said the 'Anazi], delegated [matters] to Ziyād b. Abi Sufyān, who was governor of al-Baṣrah, and he gave al-Huṭay'ah a gift of a thousand [dirhams].

'Umar wrote down everything (the 'Anazi) said and sent for Abū Mūsā. When he arrived, ('Umar) kept him waiting for some days, then summoned him, together with Iddābah b. Miḥṣan. He handed the document over to (Iddābah), telling him to read what he had written. He read, "He has taken sixty young [captives] for himself." Abū Mūsā replied, "I was shown those who had a ransom [on their head]. I took a ransom for them and divided it out among the Muslims." Iddābah agreed that he had not lied, but said that neither had he himself lied. Iddābah continued, "He has two measures [of grain]." Abū Mūsā replied, "One for my family with which to feed them and another to give to the Muslims, where they take their provisions." Iddābah agreed that he had not lied, but said that neither had he himself lied. When (Iddābah) mentioned 'Aqilah, Abū Mūsā remained silent and made no attempt to justify himself. ('Umar) knew that Iddābah had told him the truth. (The 'Anazi) continued that Ziyād was

361. 'Umar says, lā mathaban wa-lā aḥlan! The reply reads, ammā al-marāšu fa-min Allāh; wa-ammā al-ahlu fa-lā aḥlan!
362. Arabic qaṭīz; see Hinz, Masse, 49.
in charge of the people’s affairs [in al-Baṣrah], but this man did not know what kind of a governor he was. [Abū Mūsā] said, “I found that he was a man of merit and perception, so I handed over responsibility for my governorate to him.” “And he gave al-Ḥuṭay’ah a thousand!” [Abū Mūsā] said, “I stuffed his mouth with money so he would not revile me!” [‘Umar] said, “Now you have done something!” He sent [Abū Mūsā] back [to al-Baṣrah] and told him when he arrived there to send Ziyād and ‘Aqilah to him. This he did. ‘Aqilah arrived before Ziyād, then he came and stood at the door. ‘Umar went out while Ziyād was standing at the door, dressed in white linen clothes, and said to him, “What clothes are these?” So he told him. “How much did they cost?” asked [‘Umar], and he told him they cost little. [‘Umar] believed him and said, “How much is your stipend?” He replied, “Two thousand.” [‘Umar] asked him what he had done with the first stipend he got. He replied that he had bought his mother and set her free. With the second, [he said], he bought his stepson, a young slave, and set him free. [‘Umar] wished him success and questioned him about the ordinances of God, the religious practices and the Qur’ān and found him well versed in religious knowledge. He sent him back, ordering the Basran commanders to follow his advice. He held ‘Aqilah back in Medina. [‘Umar] commented, “Indeed ḍabbah al-‘Anazi was angry with Abū Mūsā with some justification, that he came to him, but left him in anger that he received no worldly gain. ḍabbah has told the truth about Abū Mūsā, but also lied, and his lying has marred his telling the truth. Beware of lying, lying leads [one] into hellfire!”

Now al-Ḥuṭay’ah had met [Abū Mūsā] and he had given him a gift during the attack on Bayrūd. Abū Mūsā had begun to besiege them and attack [the Persians and Kurds], and he finally defeated them. Then he passed on from them, leaving al-Rabī’ as his representative among them. Then after the conquest he returned to them and took charge of the division [of the spoils].

According to al-Sarī—Shu’ayb—Sayf—Abū ‘Amī—al-

---

365. Arabic, fa-qāla qad fa’alta mā fa’alta!
366. Abū ‘Amī was the client of the unidentified Ibrāhīm b. Ṭalḥah. See notes 664 and 665, below.
The Events of the Year 23

Hasan—Asid b. al-Mutashammis, nephew of al-Ahnaf b. Qays: I was present with Abū Mūsā on the day Iṣfahān [was taken] at the conquest of the settlements, in charge of which were 'Abdallah b. Warqā' al-Riyāḥi and 'Abdallah b. Warqā' al-Asadi. Then Abū Mūsā was sent to al-Kūfah and 'Umar b. Surāqah al-Makhzūmī was appointed governor of al-Baṣrah. Then Abū Mūsā was reappointed governor of al-Baṣrah, and 'Umar died while he was in charge of prayer there. (His) governorship of (al-Baṣrah) was by turns, not continuous. 'Umar would sometimes summon (Abū Mūsā) to send him as reinforcement to one of the armies, and he would carry out that role.

Salamah b. Qays al-Ashja'ī and the Kurds

According to 'Abdallah b. Kathir al-'Abdi—Ja'far b. 'Awn—Abū Janāb—Abū al-Muḥaṣṣal al-Rudayni—Makhlaḍ al-Bakri and 'Alqamah b. Marthad—Sulaymān b. Buraydah. Whenever an army of Believers had been assembled under his instructions, the Commander of the Faithful appointed as their commander someone versed in religious knowledge and law. [Now such] an army assembled under his instructions, so he despatched Salamah b. Qays al-Ashja'ī in command. ['Umar] addressed [him as follows]:

Go forth in God's name and fight in God's cause against all those who do not believe in God. If you meet your polytheist enemy, call upon them to take [one of]...
three courses of action. Summon them to Islam and if they accept, and choose [to remain] in their lands, they will have alms obligations\(^{376}\) [to be paid] from their own wealth and have no share in the immovable booty [accruing to] the Muslims. If, [having accepted Islam], they choose to join you, they will have similar privileges and obligations to your own. But if they refuse [to accept Islam], then summon them to [pay] the land tax. If they declare that they will pay the land tax, fight their enemy beyond them and leave them free to pay—but do not impose on them more than they have the capacity [to pay]. If they refuse [to pay the land tax], then fight them, for God will be your helper against them. If they fortify themselves against your [attack] in some fortified place and request you to [allow them] to surrender under the terms of God’s and His Apostle’s judgment, do not allow them to do so, for you do not know what these judgments are as they affect them. If, however, they request you to [allow them] to surrender under the terms of God’s and His Apostle’s covenant, do not grant them these, but rather grant them your own covenants. If they fight you, do not act unfaithfully or treacherously; do not inflict exemplary punishment [on them] or kill minors.

Salamah reported [as follows]. We marched on and met up with our polytheist enemy and summoned them to [act as] the Commander of the Faithful had instructed. But they refused to accept Islam. So we called upon them to [pay] land tax, but they refused to declare [their willingness to pay], so we fought them and God gave us victory over them. We killed their military, but made their children captive. We collected the spoils together. Now Salamah b. Qays spotted an ornament [among the spoils] and said, “You are not interested in this; would you be willing to send it to the Commander of the Faithful? [We] owe [this] to him and [should go to] some trouble for him.” They replied that they would be willing. (Salamah) continued: So he put this

---

376. Arabic zakāh; see SEL, s.v. [Schacht].
ornament into a casket and sent off one of his men, saying, "Take it and, when you come to al-Baṣrah, against the gifts the Commander of the Faithful [will give you], buy two baggage camels and load them up with provisions for yourself and your young slave. Then make your way to the Commander of the Faithful."

[The messenger] reported as follows: I did this and came to the Commander of the Faithful as he was feeding lunch to the people, leaning on a stick, as a shepherd does, and walking round the huge bowls, saying, "Some more meat for this lot, Yarfa'; some more bread for these; some more soup for these." When I was pushed [through the crowd] into his presence, he told me to sit down. I did so among those people nearest [to him]. There was some rough food—even the food I had with me was better! When the people had finished, he told Yarfa' to take away his bowls, then he turned away. I followed, and he entered the room of a house. I asked permission to enter and gave my greetings. He gave me permission, and I entered to where he was. He was sitting on a hair cloth leaning against two leather cushions stuffed with palm fibres. He threw one over to me and I sat down on it, [finding myself] in a space inside a vestibule in which there was a compartment with a small curtain. ['Umar] asked [his wife], Umm Kulthum [to bring us] our lunch. She brought out to him a piece of bread with some olive oil by the side of which was some unground salt. ['Umar] asked Umm Kulthum to join us and eat some of this [food] with us. She replied, however, that she could hear the voice of a man with ['Umar]. He confirmed that this was true, [adding that] he did not think he was a local. (The messenger) added that this was when he realized that ['Umar] did not know him. (Umm Kulthum) said, "If you had intended me to come out to join the men, you would have dressed me up, as Ibn Ja'far does his

---

377. He is 'Umar's personal servant.
378. Implying that she could join the men because the visitor was an outsider and someone who did not know her.
379. 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far b. Abī Ṭālib, the nephew of 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib died in 80/699 or 85/705. See EI², s.v. (Zeterstéen).
wife, as al-Zubayr does his wife, and as Talhah does his wife! "Is it not enough for you," replied ['Umar], "that you are called Umm Kulthum, daughter of 'Ali b. Abi Talib and wife of the Commander of the Faithful, 'Umar?!" [To me] he said, "Eat; if she were willing [to join us], she would have given you better food than this!" [The messenger] continued: So I ate a little, but the food I had with me was better than this! He ate, and I have never seen a heartier eater than he. No food stuck to his hand or his mouth! Then he asked for drink, and they brought a bowl of a barley-meal drink. "Give the man a drink," said ['Umar]. [The messenger] continued: So I drank a little—the barley-meal drink I had with me was better than this! Then he took hold of it and drank down to the dregs, saying, "Praise be to God who has filled us up with food and quenched our thirst!" I said, "The Commander of the Faithful has eaten and drunk his fill. There is something you can do for me, Commander of the Faithful." He asked what it was. I replied, "I am the envoy of Salamah b. Qays." ['Umar] said, "Both Salamah b. Qays and his envoy are welcome. Tell me how the emigrants are." They are as safe and have conquered as many of their enemies as you would wish, Commander of the Faithful." "What are their prices like?" ['Umar] asked. [The messenger] continued: I said, "The very cheapest." "What about their meat?" he asked, "for this is the mainstay of the Arabs; they will never thrive without their mainstay." I replied, "Beef is such and such a price, mutton such and such. On we went, Commander of the Faithful, and we met up with our polytheist enemy. We called upon them to accept Islam, as you commanded us, but they refused. So we called upon them to [pay] land tax, but they refused, so we fought

---

380. Al-Zubayr b. al-'Awâmm, the famous Companion, was killed by 'Ali at the battle of the Camel in 36/656 after his revolt with Talhah [see the next note] and the wife of the Prophet, 'A'ishah. A member of the electoral council after the assassination of 'Umar. See Shaban, History, 71-72; CHIs, 70.

381. Talhah b. 'Ubaydallâh, a Companion also killed with al-Zubayr in 36/656. A member of the electoral council after the assassination of 'Umar. See Shaban, History, loc. cit., and CHIs, loc. cit. and preceding note.

382. Arabic, fa-shariba-hu ḥattâ qara'a al-qadahu jabhatâ-h, literally "he drank it until the bowl knocked against his forehead".

383. Arabic, muhâjirûn. I take this as a euphemism for the Arab troops on the front line.
against them and God gave us victory over them. We killed their military, but took their women captive, and we collected together the spoils. Salamah spotted an ornament among the spoils and said to the men, "You are not interested in this. Are you willing to send it to the Commander of the Faithful?" They replied that they were." I took out my casket. But when he saw the gems, red, yellow and green, he leapt up, put his hand on his waist and said, "May God never, [if I were to accept this,], fill 'Umar's belly again!" [The messenger] continued: The womenfolk thought I was intending to assassinate him, so they came to the curtain. He said [to the messenger], "Keep what you brought. Yarfa', strike him on the neck!" So I was [re]arranging my casket, while he was striking me on the neck. I said, "Commander of the Faithful, my camels are exhausted. I need replacements." He replied, "Yarfa', give him two baggage camels from the alms. If you meet anyone who has a greater need of them than you, hand them over to him." I said I would obey his orders. He added, "I swear that, if the Muslims disperse to their winter quarters before this is distributed among them, I shall certainly bring about calamity for you and your master!"

[The messenger] continued: "So I left and came to Salamah and said, May God not grant His blessing for what you have done to me in this particular case! Distribute this among the men before some calamity befalls us both." So he did. A gem was sold at 5 and 6 dirhams, although it was worth more than 20,000!

According to al-Sari's version—Shu'ayb—Sayf—Abū Janāb—Sulaymān b. Buraydah: I met the messenger of Salamah b. Qays al-Ashja'i who said, "When an Arab army assembled under the instructions of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, . . .," and then he reported an account similar to that of 'Abdallāh b. Kathīr on the authority of Ja'far b. Awn, except that he said in his report, on the authority of Shu'ayb, on the authority of Sayf [with the following variants], "Grant them your own covenants." He continued, "We met up with our Kurdish enemies, and we called upon them . . ."

[The same source] also reported: We collected the spoils

384. That is, to frighten and scold him.
together and Salamah found two boxes of jewels among them, so he put them in a casket.

He also reported as follows: "Is it not enough for you that you are called Umm Kulthum, daughter of 'Ali b. Abi Ṭalib, wife of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb?" She replied, "This is of little use to me!"

He said [to the messenger], "Eat."

He also reported as follows: They brought a bowl of barley-meal drink. Whenever they moved it, some of its contents fizzed up over [the top]. When they left it alone, it was still. Then he told [the messenger] to drink. So I drank a little—my own drink I had with me was better than this! He took the bowl, drinking it down to the dregs, then he said, "You are indeed a poor eater and drinker!"

He also reported as follows: I said, "[I am] the messenger of Salamah." He replied, "Welcome, Salamah and his messenger. It is as if you were a product of his loins. Tell me about the emigrants."

He also reported as follows: Then he said, "May God never, [if I were to accept this], fill 'Umar's belly again!" He continued: The womenfolk thought I had assassinated him, so they drew the curtain. He said, "Strike him on his neck, Yarfa." So he struck my neck, as I cried out, and exclaimed, "Get out of here and be quick about it!" He continued, "By God, there is no other god but He! If the army disperses to its winter quarters . . . ," and the rest of the account was similar to that of 'Abdallāh b. Kathir.

intermediary between 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb and Salamah b. Qays: 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb sent the army to Salamah b. Qays al-Ashja'i in al-Ḥirah, saying, “Go forth in God’s name...,” and he gave an account similar to that of 'Abdallāh b. Kathīr on the authority of Ja'far.

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabari] reported as follows: 'Umar led the wives of the Messenger of God on the pilgrimage this year and this was the last pilgrimage in which he led the people. This is also according to al-Ḥārith392— Ibn Sa'd393—al-Waqidi.

['Umar's] death took place during this year, [23; November 19, 643—November 7, 644].

'Umar's Assassination394

According to Salm b. Junādah,395—Sulaymān b. 'Abd al-'Aziz b. Abī Thābit b. 'Abd al-'Azīz b. 'Umar b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Awf,396—his father—'Abdallāh b. Ja'far,397—his father—al-Miswar b. Makhramah (whose mother was 'Ātīkah, daughter of 'Awf).398 'Umar went out one day to wander around the market. He was met by Abū Lu'lu'ah,399 a young Christian slave of al-Mughīrah b. Shu'bah, who said, “Help me, Commander of the Faithful, against al-Mughīrah b. Shu'bah, for

---

393. Abū 'Abdallāh Muḥammad b. Sa'd, who died in 230/845, the famous author of the Ṭabaqāt. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IX, 182ff.; Duri, Rise, 40; Sezgin, GAS, I, 300ff.; EI², s.v. “Ibn Sa'd” (Fück); Translation, I, 215 n. 337.
394. See Ibn al-Athir, Kāmil, III, 24ff.; Mas'udi, Murūj, IV, 226ff.; Ibn 'Abd Rabbihi, 'Iqd, IV, 272; Bal'ami, Chronique, III, 528ff. See also Ṭabari, Selection, which begins at this point in the text.
396. An unidentified narrator.
398. Al-Miswar b. Makhramah died in 64/683. Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, X, 234. 'Ātīkah was the sister of 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Awf. See also Ibn Qutaybah, Ma'ārif, 429.
399. Abū Lu'lu'ah Fayruz al-Nihāwandi. He is believed to have originated in Nihāwand, hence his nisbah, and to have been captured by the Byzantines during the Perso-Byzantine wars before Islam. He became a Christian when held by the Byzantines. See Ṭabari, I, 2632.
I pay a great deal of tax.” “How much?” enquired ('Umar). "Two dirhams a day,” was the reply. "What is your trade?” asked ('Umar). "I am] a carpenter, stone mason, and smith,” he replied. "I do not think your tax is a lot in view of the work you do,” ('Umar) said. "I have heard that you claim you could make a mill that will grind by wind power if you wished.” He replied that he could. ('Umar) asked him to make him a mill. (Abū Lu’lu’ah) replied, "If you survive, I shall certainly make you a mill that will be the talk of everyone in both East and West!” Then (Abū Lu’lu’ah) left ('Umar), who said [to himself], "[That] slave has just threatened me!” Then he went off home. The next day Ka’b al-Aḥbār400 came to him and said, "Appoint your successor, Commander of the Faithful, for you are going to die in three days.” ('Umar) asked him how he knew this. He replied, "I find it in God's book, the Torah.” 'Umar said, "Can you actually find 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb in the Torah?” (Ka’b) replied, "Indeed no, but I do find a complete description of you and also that your allotted life span has come to an end.” (The source) continued: And 'Umar was experiencing no sickness or pain. Next day Ka’b came to him and said, "One day gone and two to go, Commander of the Faithful!” Then he came to him on the day after that and said, "Two days gone, one and a night to go! You have got until tomorrow morning!” That morning 'Umar went out to prayers; he used to assign certain men to [see to] the lines [of those praying] and when they were straight, he would come and proclaim “God is great!” Abū Lu’lu’ah slipped in among the people, carrying in his hand a dagger with -two blades and its haft in the middle. He struck 'Umar six blows, one of which was below his navel, and this was the one which killed him. (Abū Lu’lu’ah) also killed Kulayb b. Abī al-Bukayr al-Laythi,401 who was behind ('Umar). When ['Umar] felt the heat of the weapon, he fell and said, "Is 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Awf402

---

400. Ka’b al-Aḥbār was a Yemenite Jewish scholar who converted to Islam in ca. 17/638. He died ca. 35/655. See El², s.v. [Schmitz].
401. Kulayb b. Abī al-Bukayr al-Laythi has an entry in Ibn Ḥajar, Isābah, VIII, minus the Abī, where this event is mentioned.
402. 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Awf was a prominent early Muslim convert and merchant. He died ca. 31/652. See El², s.v. [Houtsma-Watt].
among the crowd?” They said, “Yes, Commander of the Faithful, 
he is here.” (‘Umar) said to ‘Abd al-Rahmān, “Come forward 
and lead the people in prayer.” So ‘Abd al-Rahmān led the 
people in prayer, while ‘Umar lay prostrate. Then he was carried 
away and brought into his house. He called for ‘Abd al-Rahmān 
b. ‘Awf and said, “I want to appoint you my successor.” He 
replied, “Indeed, Commander of the Faithful, I accept. If you 
order me, I shall accept [the appointment] from you.” (‘Umar) 
said, “What do you want?” (‘Abd al-Rahmān) said, “I beseech 
you by God. Do you order me to accept this [appointment]?”’ 
(‘Umar) replied, “No, indeed.” (‘Abd al-Rahmān) said, “I shall 
ever have anything to do with [accepting] (the appointment).”’ 
(‘Umar) said, “Give me some peace and quiet so that I can 
appoint those who still met with the Messenger of God’s 
approval when he died. Call ‘Alī for me, ‘Uthmān, al-Zubayr, 
and Sa’d.” [When they had arrived, he said], “Wait for your 
brother Talhah for three [nights]. If he does not come, do what 
you have to do. If you should take authority over the people, 
‘Alī, I implore you not to bring them under the power of Banū 
Hāshim.403 If you should take authority over the people, 
‘Uthmān, I implore you not to bring them under the power of 
Banū Abī Mu‘ayyāt.404 If you should take authority over the 
people, Sa’d, I implore you not to bring them under the power of 
your relatives.405 Off you go! Consult together, then do what 
you have to do. Let Șuhayb406 lead the people in prayer.” 

Then he called for Abū Ṭalḥah al-Anṣārī407 and said, “Stand at
their door and do not let anyone enter into their presence. I commend to the caliph after my death the Helpers, 'Who have made their abode in the city [of the Prophet] and in the Faith,'408 that he do good to him who does good among them and forgive him who does evil among them. I commend to the caliph after my death the Arabs—for they are the very substance of Islam—that what is their due of alms be taken and assigned to their poor. I commend to the caliph after my death the covenant of the Messenger of God that [non-Muslims] be given a compact faithfully fulfilled. O God, have I done what I ought to do?! I leave the caliph after my death in a cleaner [condition] than the palm of the hand.409 'Abdallah b. 'Umar,410 go and find out who has murdered me.” He replied, “Commander of the Faithful, you have been murdered by Abū Lu’lu’ah, slave of al-Mughirah b. Shu’bah.” ('Umar) exclaimed, “Praise be to God who has never put my fate into the hands of someone who has bowed down to Him on one single occasion!411 Go to 'A'ishah, 'Abdallah b. 'Umar, and ask her to permit me to be buried with the Prophet and Abū Bakr. If the council is divided, 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar, you should vote with the majority. If they are [split] three against three, follow the faction that 'Abd al-Rahmān supports. Allow the people to enter, 'Abdallah." So the Emigrants and the Helpers came in to see him, offering him their greetings. He would ask them if the [assassination] was the result of some conspiracy among them and they would reply, “God protect [us]!” (The source) continued: Ka'b entered with the others and when he saw him, 'Umar began to recite the following:412

Ka'b gave me an evil prediction on three distinct occasions; there can be no doubt that what Ka'b told me was right.

I am not afraid of death; I shall surely die;

409. That is, with no money in the treasury and not keeping back what was due to the Muslims.
410. The famous son of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb who died in 73/692. See Rosenthal, Historiography, 287; El², s.v. [Veccia Valgieri].
411. That is, a non-Muslim.
but I am afraid of the one transgression followed by another.\textsuperscript{413}

(The source) continued: It was suggested to the Commander of the Faithful that he should call a physician. So one from Banū al-Ḥārith b. Kaʾb\textsuperscript{414} was summoned and he gave him date wine to drink. But the date wine came back up mixed with blood. (The physician) told [them] to give him milk. (The source) continued: But the milk came back up too, [though] white. It was suggested to the Commander of the Faithful that he should appoint a successor, but he replied that he had already finished [arrangements for this].\textsuperscript{415}

He died later, on Tuesday evening, Dhū al-Hijjah 27, 23 [November 5, 644]. They took him out early the following day, Wednesday, and he was buried in ‘Āʾishah’s house along with the Prophet and Abū Bakr. Ṣuhayb came forward and prayed over him, but before this two of the Companions of the Messenger of God had come forward, ‘Alī and ‘Uthmān. One came forward from [his position] at his head, the other from [his position] at his feet. ‘Abd al-Rahmān exclaimed, “There is no god but God! How eager you both are to get hold of the caliphate! Are you not aware that the Commander of the Faithful left instructions for Ṣuhayb to lead the people in prayer?” Ṣuhayb came forward and performed this task. (The source) added that all five [members of the electoral council] went down into (‘Umar’s) grave.\textsuperscript{416}

Abū Jaʿfar [al-Ṭabari] said that it is also reported that (‘Umar) died at the beginning of al-Muharram, 24 [November 7, 644].

\textbf{The Sources of [the Conflicting Report of ‘Umar’s Death]}

According to al-Ḥārith—Muḥammad b. Sa’d—Muḥammad b. ‘Umar [al-Wāqidi]—Abū Bakr b. Ismā’il b. Muḥammad b. Sa’d\textsuperscript{417}—his father: ‘Umar was stabbed on Wednesday, Dhū al-

\textsuperscript{413} The evil prediction itself followed by the assassination?
\textsuperscript{414} It would seem to be the Yemenite tribe from the Najrān area in question here. They are a tribal group of Madḥḥij. Ibn Rasūl, ‘Ṭufah, 35; Qalqashandi, Ṣubb, I, 326; Kahhālah, Muʿjam, I, 231–32; EI\textsuperscript{2}, s.v. [Schleifer].
\textsuperscript{415} That is the appointment of the electoral council [shūrā].
\textsuperscript{416} See page 155, below.
\textsuperscript{417} An unidentified narrator, the great-grandson of Sa’d b. Abī Waqqās.
Hijjah 26, 23 [November 4, 644], and was buried on Sunday morning the beginning of al-Muharram, 24 [November 7, 644]. His rule lasted for ten years, five months, and twenty-one nights after the death of Abū Bakr, exactly twenty-two years, nine months, and thirteen days after the Hijrah. The oath of allegiance was given to 'Uthmān b. 'Affān on Monday, al-Muharram 3 [November 9, 644]. [The source] continued: I mentioned this to 'Uthmān al-Akhnasi, but he replied, "I think you are very much mistaken! 'Umar died on Dhū al-Hijjah 26 [November 4, 644] and the oath of allegiance was given to 'Uthmān b. 'Affān on Dhū al-Hijjah 29 [November 7, 644]." He began his caliphate on al-Muharram, 24."

According to Āhmād b. Thābit al-Rāzī—a traditionist—Ishāq b. 'Īsā—Abū Ma'shar: 'Umar was killed on Wednesday, Dhū al-Hijjah 26, as the year 23 was coming to a close [November 4, 644]. His caliphate lasted ten years, six months, and four days, then the oath of allegiance was given to 'Uthmān b. 'Affān.


---

419. An unidentified narrator.
424. An unidentified narrator.
425. 'Uthmān b. ʿAbd al-Rahmān. Several persons of this name are listed in the biographical dictionaries, and it is not possible to identify the one in question with any certainty.
The Events of the Year 23

According to Sayf’s version—al-Sarī—Shu‘ayb—Khulayd b. Dhafarah and Mujālid: ‘Uthmān became caliph on al-Muḥarram 3, 24 [November 9, 644]. He went out and led the people in the early evening prayer. He increased [stipends] and sent out envoys, and that practice was thereby established.

According to al-Sarī—Shu‘ayb—Sayf—‘Amr—al-Sha‘bī: The members of the electoral council agreed upon ‘Uthmān on al-Muḥarram 3 [November 9, 644] when the time of early evening prayer had begun and after the call to prayer had been given by Ṣuhayb’s muezzin. They reached agreement between the first and second calls to prayer.427 [‘Uthmān] went out and led the people in prayer and provided them with an extra 100 [dirhams]. He also sent out delegations to the garrison towns, treating them with generosity. He was the first one to do this.

According to [the same source]—Hishām b. Mūhammad:428 ‘Umar was killed on Dhū al-Ḥijjah 27, 23 [November 5, 644]. His caliphate lasted ten years, six months, and four days.

‘Umar’s Genealogy429


Abū Ja‘far [al-Ṭabarî] said: (‘Umar) was called al-Fārūq.431

427. The iqāmah is the second call to prayer, after the adhān, given by the muezzin and it marks the beginning of the prayer proper. See SEI, s.v. “Ikāma” [Juynboll].
428. Abū al-Mundhir Hishām b. Mūḥammad b. al-Sā‘ib al-Kalbi, the famous historian who died ca. 206/822. See Sezgin, GAS, I, 268–71; Duri, Rise, 51ff. and passim; El², s.v. [Atallah].
430. That is there are three separate chains of authority.
431. Meaning “he who distinguishes between truth and falsehood.”
The Conquest of Iran

Preceding generations were in dispute about who called him by this name. Some of them have reported that the Messenger of God gave him this name.

The Sources of [the Report that Muhammad First Called 'Umar al-Fārūq]

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muḥammad b. 'Umar—Abū Ḥazrah Ya'qūb b. Mujāhid—Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm—Abū 'Amr Dhakwān. I asked 'Ā'ishah who gave 'Umar the name al-Fārūq. She replied that it was the Prophet. Some people reported that the first to call ('Umar) by this name were the People of the Book.

The Sources of [the Report that the People of the Book Did That]

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Ya'qūb b. Ibrāhīm b. Sa'd—his father—Ṣāliḥ b. Kaysān—Ibn Shihāb: We heard that the People of the Book were the first to call 'Umar al-Fārūq. The Muslims did relate this in their reports, but we have never heard that the Messenger of God made any such reference.

A Description of 'Umar

According to Hannād b. al-Sāri—Wakī—Sufyān b. Abī al-Najjūd—Zīr b. Ḥubaysh: 'Umar went out one
festival day or to the funeral of Zaynab,⁴⁴² [showing] a dark complexion, very tall, bald, and ambidextrous, walking [head and shoulders above the people] as if he were mounted.

According to Hannâd—Sharîk—‘Āṣîm—Zîrî: I saw ‘Umar coming to the festival, walking barefoot, ambidextrous, and wearing a striped garment tucked up. He was towering over the people as if he were mounted and was saying, “People, perform the hijrah [with sincerity], and do not pretend to be like those who do!”

According to al-Ḥârîth—Ibn Sa’d—Muḥammad b. ‘Umar—‘Umar b. ‘Imrân b. ‘Abdallâh b. ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. Abi Bakr⁴⁴³—‘Āṣîm b. ‘Ubaydallâh⁴⁴⁴—‘Abdallâh b. ‘Āmîr b. Rabî’ah:⁴⁴⁵ I noticed ‘Umar was a wan man, pale with an overlay of red. [He was also] very tall and with a bald patch.


According to al-Ḥârîth—Muḥammad b. Sa’d—Muḥammad b. ‘Umar—Khâlid b. Abi Bakr:⁴⁴⁸ ‘Umar used to dye his beard yellow and comb his hair with henna.

His Birth and Age


---

⁴⁴². This is probably Zaynab bt. [al-]Jâbîb, one of the Prophet’s wives, who died in 20/641. Cf. Ṭabarî, I, 2595. ‘Umar did however have a wife named Zaynab and also a daughter, see pages 100–1, below.

⁴⁴³. An unidentified narrator.

⁴⁴⁴. ‘Āṣîm b. ‘Ubaydallâh b. ‘Āṣîm b. ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭâb died at the beginning of the caliphate of Abû al-‘Abbâs; that is, ca. 132/750. See Ibn Hajar, Tahdhib, V, 46–49.


⁴⁴⁶. An unidentified narrator.


heard 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb say, "I was born four years before the last great Conflict."  

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarî] reported: The early scholars differed on the subject of 'Umar's age: some said that on the day he was killed he was fifty-five years old.

Some of the Sources of [the Report that He Was Fifty-Five Years Old]

According to Zayd b. Akhzam al-Ṭāʾī—Abū Qutaybah—Jarir b. Ḥāzim—Ayyūb—Nāfi'—[Abdallāh] Ibn 'Umar: 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb was killed when he was fifty-five years old.

According to 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Ḥakam—Nu'aym b. Ḥammād—al-Darāwardi—'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar—Nāfi'—Ibn 'Umar: 'Umar died when he was fifty-five years old.


Others said he was on the day he died fifty-three years old and some months.

450. Reference to the last of the four “conflicts” (fīār) in pre-Islamic times, that of al-Barrād b. Qays, who killed 'Urwah al-Rahbāl during one of the sacred months when no fighting was permitted. See Lane, Lexicon, 234; E12, s.v. (Fück).

452. Abū Qutaybah is probably Salm b. Qutaybah, who died in 201/816. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IV, 133–34.
456. Al-Miṣrī, the famous Egyptian historian, who died 257/871. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VI, 208; E12, s.v. "Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam" (Rosenthal).
459. 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar b. Ḥafṣ b. 'Āṣim b. 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, who died in 147/764. See Sezgin, GAS, I, 89.
The Events of the Year 23

The Sources of [the Report that He Was Fifty-Three Years Old]

This was reported to me by Hishām b. Muḥammad b. al-Kalbi. Yet others said he died when he was sixty-three.

The Sources of [the Report that He Was Sixty-Three Years Old]

Ibn al-Muthānnā—Ibn Abī 'Adī—Dāwūd—'Āmir [al-Sha'bī]: 'Umar died when he was sixty-three. Yet others said he died at the age of sixty-one.

The Sources of [the Report that He Was Sixty-One Years Old]

Ibn al-Muthānnā—Ibn Abī 'Adī—Dāwūd—'Āmir [al-Sha'bī]: 'Umar died when he was sixty-three. Yet others said he died when he was sixty.

The Sources of [the Report that He Was Sixty Years Old]

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muḥammad b. 'Umar—Hishām b. Sa'd—Zayd b. Aslam—his father: 'Umar died when he was sixty. Muḥammad b. 'Umar reported that this is the most accurate account in our opinion. It is reported on the authority of al-Madā'īnī that 'Umar died when he was fifty-seven.

---

466. An unidentified narrator.
The Names of His Children and Wives


According to 'Alī b. Muḥammad [al-Madāʾīnī], ('Umar) also married Mulaykah bt. Jarwal al-Khuzaʿī in the pre-Islamic era. She bore him 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar. He became separated from her at the time of the Truce.469 After 'Umar, Abū al-Jahm b. Ḥudhayfah470 married her.

According to Muḥammad b. 'Umar [al-Wāqidi], the mother of Zayd the younger and 'Ubaydallah, who was killed at the battle of Siffin471 [fighting] with Muʿāwiyyah, was Umm Kulthūm bt. Jarwal b. Mālik b. al-Musayyib b. Rabīʿah b. Aṣrām b. Ḥābīb b. Ḥarām b. Ḥabarbiyyah b. Salūl b. Kaʿb b. 'Amr b. Khuzaʿah. However, Islam brought about a separation between her and 'Umar.

'Ali b. Muḥammad [al-Madāʾīnī] reported that ('Umar) also married Quraybah bt. Abi Umayyah al-Makhzūmī in the pre-Islamic era. He became separated from her also at the time of the Truce. 'Abd al-Ḥaṯmān b. Abī Bakr al-Ṣiddīq472 married her after ('Umar).

There were also other reports that he married Umm Ḥakım bt. al-Ḥaṯrī b. Hishām b. al-Mughirah b. Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. Makhzūm after the advent of Islam. She bore him Fāṭimah, but he divorced her. But al-Madāʾīnī reported that it was said he did not divorce her.

He also married after the advent of Islam Jamilah, the sister of

469. That is, the truce of al-Hudaybiyāh in 6/627 between the Prophet and the Meccans. See Ibn Hishām, Sirah, II, 316ff. (Guillaume, Life, 499ff.).

470. Abū [al-Jahm 'Amīr] Ubayd b. Ḥudhayfah. See Ibn al-Athir, Usd, V, 162–63. No date of death is given in the entry, but he accepted Islam when Mecca was conquered in 8/629. He was renowned as a genealogist.

471. The battle of Siffin took place between 'Ali and Muʿāwiyyah in 37/657.

472. A son of the first caliph.
The Events of the Year 23

'Āṣim b. Thābit b. Abī al-Aqlāḥ, whose name was Qays b. 'Īṣmah b. Mālik b. Ḍubay'ah b. Zayd b. al-Aws of the Helpers. She bore him 'Āṣim, but he divorced her.

He also married Umm Kulthūm bt. 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib, whose mother was Fāṭimah, the daughter of the Messenger of God. He reportedly gave her 40,000 [dirhams] as a dowry. She bore him Zayd and Ruqayyah.

He also married Luhayyah, a Yemeni woman, who bore him 'Abd al-Raḥmān. Al-Madā'īnī reported that she bore him 'Abd al-Raḥmān the youngest. He added that there was a report that [Luhayyah] was a concubine. Al-Wāqidi also said this Luhayyah was a concubine. He added that Luhayyah bore him the middle 'Abd al-Raḥmān. [Al-Wāqidi] also reported that the mother of the youngest 'Abd al-Raḥmān was a concubine. He also had Fukayyah as a concubine, and, according to several reports, she bore him Zaynab. [Al-Wāqidi] also reported that she was 'Umar's youngest child.

He also married 'Āṭikah bt. Zayd b. 'Amr b. Nufayl. Before him she had been married to 'Abdallah b. Abī Bakr.473 When 'Umar died, al-Zubayr b. al-'Awwām married her.

Al-Madā'īnī said:474 ['Umar] asked for the hand of Umm Kulthūm bt. Abī Bakr when she was young, and he sent a message regarding her to 'Ā'ishah. The latter told (Umm Kulthūm) that the [marriage] was up to her. Umm Kulthūm replied that she did not want him. "You are turning down the Commander of the Faithful!" 'Ā'ishah exclaimed. "Yes," [Umm Kulthūm] said, "he leads a rough life and is severe with his womenfolk." So 'Ā'ishah sent a message to 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ, telling him [of Umm Kulthūm's decision]. "Leave it to me," was his reply. ['Amr] came to 'Umar and said, "Commander of the Faithful, I have heard some news from which I invoke God's name to protect you!" "What is it?" he asked. ['Amr] continued, "You are seeking the hand of Umm Kulthūm bt. Abī Bakr." ['Umar] replied, "Yes, do you think I am not good enough for her or she for me?" ['Amr] said, "Neither, but she is young and

---

473. A son of the first caliph.
474. See the account in Bal'ami, Chronique, III, 535–36.
grew up with kindness and gentleness under the protection of the Mother of the Believers. You are rough and ready. But we are in awe of you and we cannot turn you away from something that is natural to you. How will it be with [Umm Kulthûm] if she disobeys you on any matter and you punish her physically? You will have taken Abû Bakr's place as his child's [guardian] in a fashion that does not befit you. "[Umar] replied, "But how will all this be with 'A'ishah? I have already told her [I am going to marry Umm Kulthûm]." [Amr] said, "I shall deal with her on your behalf. Also I shall show you someone better than (Umm Kulthûm bt. Abî Bakr), [namely] Umm Kulthûm bt. 'Alî b. Abî 'lîlib through whom you will acquire a relationship with the Messenger of God."

Al-Madâ'ini said: ('Umar) was seeking the hand of Umm Abân bt. 'Utba b. Rabî'ah. However she did not like him and said, "He closes his door, keeping away any goodness he has [from others]; he enters wearing a frown and comes out wearing a frown!"

When He Became a Muslim

Abû Ja'far [al-Tabarî] said: It is reported that ('Umar) embraced Islam after forty-five men and twenty-one women.

The Sources of This Report

According to al-Ḥârith— Ibn Sa'd—Muḥammad b. 'Umar [al-Wâqidi]—Muḥammad b. 'Abdallâh477—his father: I mentioned the account about 'Umar to [my son] and he said that 'Abdallâh b. Tha’labah b. Șu’ayr478 had told him that 'Umar embraced Islam after forty-five men and twenty-one women.

---

475. That is, 'A'ishah, the wife of the Prophet.
476. An accusation of miserliness.
Some of His Memorable Deeds

According to Abū al-Sā‘īb [Salm b. Junādah]—Ibn Fuḍayl—Dirār—Huṣayn al-Murri: 'Umar said, "The Arabs are like a tractable camel that follows its leader. So its leader should watch where he is leading it. By the Lord of the Ka‘bah, I shall certainly carry them along the [straight] road.

According to Ya‘qūb b. Ibrāhīm—Ismā‘īl b. Ibrāhīm—Yūnus—al-Ḥasan [al-Baṣrī]: ‘Umar said, "When I find myself in a position when I feel comfortable, but that means my people have no access [to me], then this [can]not [continue] to be my position; I [must once again] be on the same level as my people.

According to Khalil b. Aslam—al-Naḍr b. Shumayl—Qaṭān—Abū Yazid al-Madini—a client of ‘Uthmān b. ‘Affān: I was riding behind ‘Uthmān b. ‘Affān one hot day when there was an extremely hot wind blowing and he came to the alms-animal pen. There was a man wearing a waist wrapper and an upper garment with another wrapped around his head. He was driving camels into the pen; that is, the alms camel pen. ‘Uthmān said, "Who do you think this is?" We finally reached him and he was ‘Umar b. al-Khattāb. (‘Uthmān) said, "He is indeed 'the strong, the trustworthy one'!"

According to Ja‘far b. Muḥammad al-Kūfī and ‘Abbās b.
Abi Ṭālib—Abū Zakariyyā' Yaḥyā b. Muṣ'ab al-Kalbī—'Umar b. Nāfī—Abū Bakr al-'Absi: I entered the alms-animal enclosure with 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb and 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib. 'Uthmān sat down in the shade to write while 'Ali stood by him, dictating to him what 'Umar was saying. On a very hot day 'Umar was standing in the sun and wearing two black garments, one as a waist wrapper, another wrapped around his head, as he counted the alms camels, recording their colors and their ages. 'Ali spoke to 'Uthmān, and I heard him quoting the description of the daughter of Shu'ayb in God's Book, "O father, hire him; the best of those you hire will be the strong, the trustworthy one!" 'Ali pointed at 'Umar and said, "This is 'the strong, the trustworthy one'!"

According to Ya'qūb b. Ibrāhīm—Īsāḥā'il—Yūnus—al-Ḥasan: 'Umar said,

If I live, I shall certainly travel for a whole year among my subjects, God willing. I know that people have needs that do not reach me. Their governors will not refer them to me, nor will they themselves come to me. I shall travel to Syria and stay there two months. Then I shall travel to the Jazirah and stay there two months. Then I shall travel to Egypt and stay there two months. Then I shall travel to Bahrain and stay there two months. Then I shall travel to al-Kūfah and stay there for two months. Then I shall travel to al-巴士rah and stay there for two months. Indeed, what a fine year this will be!

According to Muḥammad b. 'Awf—Abū al-Mughīrah 'Abd al-Quddūs b. al-Ḥajjāj—Ṣafwān b. 'Amr—Abū al-Mukhāriq

---

491. An unidentified narrator.
492. 'Umar b. Nāfī al-Thaqafi has a short notice in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VI, 500, which gives, however, no date of death.
493. The text has Abū Bakr al-'Absi, but Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, XII, lists an Abū Bakr al-'Ansi, associating him with 'Umar b. Nāfī (see preceding note).
497. It is not possible to identify this narrator with certainty.
The Events of the Year 23

Zuhayr b. Sālim—Ka'b al-Aḥbār: I stayed with a man called Mālik who was under the protection of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb. I asked him how one could get access to the Commander of the Faithful. He replied that there was no door barring the way to ('Umar or any obstacle, that he would say his prayers, would then sit down, and anyone who wished could talk to him.

According to Yūnus b. 'Abd al-A'la—Sufyān [b. 'Uyaynah]—Yaḥyā—Sālim—Aslam: 'Umar sent me off with some alms camels to the designated pasturage and I put my baggage on one of the she-camels. When I was intending to lead them away, he asked me to show him them. I did so and he saw my baggage on a fine she-camel in among them and said, ‘You wretch! You make use of a she-camel that will provide goodness to a Muslim family! Why not a two-year-old camel constantly discharging urine, or a she with little milk?’

According to 'Umar b. Ismā'il b. Mujālid al-Hamdānī—Abū Mu'āwiyah—Abū Ḥayyān—Abū al-Zinzān—Abū al-Dihqānān: 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb was told that there was someone from al-Anbā' who had some knowledge of the state register [and was asked] if he would take him on as a secretary. 'Umar replied, ‘In this case, I would be taking on as a confidant someone from outside the [community of the] Believers!’

According to Yūnus b. 'Abd al-A'la—Ibn Wahb—'Abd

---

498. He has a brief notice in Ibn Hajar, Tahdhib, III, 344, although no date of death is given.
501. That is, why do you have to choose a good beast as your baggage camel, when there are inferior ones that could be used?
505. An unidentified narrator.
506. An unidentified narrator.
508. 'Abdallāh b. Wahb died in 197/813. See Ibn Hajar, Tahdhib, VI, 71–74; Sezgin, GAS, I, 466.
al-Raḥmān b. Zayd[^509]—his father—his grandfather: 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb addressed the people and said, "By Him who sent Muhammad with the Truth, if one camel were to perish unintended on the bank of the Euphrates, I would fear that God would hold the Khaṭṭāb family responsible for it." Abū Zayd[^510] added that the Khaṭṭāb family meant himself, no one else.

According to Ibn al-Muthannā—Ibn Abī 'Adī—Shu'bah[^511]—Abū 'Imrān al-Jawnī: 'Umar wrote to Abū Mūsā[^512], "There are still prominent men who refer the needs of the people [to me] on their behalf. So honor those prominent men who are in your jurisdiction. It is justice enough for an uninfluential Muslim that he be treated fairly in juridical decisions and in the division [of spoils after being referred to me]."

According to Abū Kurayb[^513]—Ibn Idrīs[^514]—Muṭarrīf[^515]—al-Sha'bi: A bedouin came to 'Umar and said, "My stallion camel has both mange and saddle sores; give me a mount." 'Umar replied to him, "Your camel does not have mange and saddle sores!" (The bedouin) turned away, reciting the following.[^516]

Abū Ḥafṣ 'Umar has sworn by God's name
That no mange or saddle sores have afflicted [my mount].
Forgive him, God, that he has given a false oath!

['Umar] exclaimed, "O God, forgive me!" He called the bedouin back and gave him a [fresh] mount.

[^2740]

According to Ya'qūb b. Ibrāhīm—Ismā'īl—Ayyūb—Muḥammad: I was informed that a man who was related to 'Umar asked him [for money]. But he chided him and sent him away. People spoke to ['Umar] about him, and he was asked why he

[^510]: Perhaps this is the grandfather, the original source.
[^512]: His provincial governor in al-Baqrāh.
[^514]: Probably Abdallāh b. Idrīs, who died in 192/807 [Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, V, 244–46], rather than 'Abd al-Muʿīn b. Idrīs, who died in 228/843 [I, 286 n. 760].
[^515]: It is not possible to identify this narrator with certainty.
[^516]: The meter is ṭaḥāṣ.
chided him and sent him away when he begged from him. He replied, "He asked me for some of God's money. What will be my excuse if I meet Him when I am a treacherous ruler? Why did he not ask for some of my money?" (The source) added that ('Umar) sent him 10,000 [dirhams].

According to Muḥammad b. al-Muthānnā—'Abd al-Rahmān b. Mahdī—Shu'bah—Yahyā b. Ḥuḍayn517—Ṭāriq b. Shihāb:518 Whenever 'Umar sent governors in charge of provinces, he would say about them, "O God, I have not sent them to take the property [of the people], nor to abuse them physically. Anyone oppressed by his commander has no commander except me."

According to Ibn Bashshār519—Ibn Abī 'Adī—Shu'bah—Qatādah—Sālim b. Abī al-Ja'd520—Ma'dan b. Abī Ṭalḥah:521 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb gave an address to his people and said, "O God, I call You to bear witness to the commanders of the garrison towns that I have sent them only to teach the people their religion and the practice of their Prophet, to distribute among them their spoils and to act with justice. If they have any doubt about any matter, they will refer it to me."

According to Abū Kurayb—Abū Bakr b. 'Ayyāsh522—Abū Ḥaṣīn:523 Whenever 'Umar appointed his governors, he would go out with them to bid them farewell, saying, "I have not appointed you governor over Muḥammad's community with limitless authority.524 I have made you governor over them only to lead them in prayer, to make decisions among them based on what is right, and to distribute [the spoils] among them justly. I have not given you limitless authority over them. Do not flog

517. An unidentified narrator.
518. Ṭāriq b. Shihāb al-Bajali died in ca. 84/703 or 123/742. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, V, 3–4.
520. Al-Ashja'i died ca. 98/716. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, III, 432–33.
521. Ma'dan b. Abī Ṭalḥah has a short notice in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, X, 218, which, however, gives no date of death.
524. For the expression 'alā ash'ārī-him wa-ḥabshārī-him, literally "over their hair and their skins," see Glossarium, CCCXII.
the Arab [troops] and humiliate them; do not keep them long from their families and bring temptation upon them; do not neglect them and cause them deprivation. Confine yourselves to the [actual text of the] Qur'ān, and do not frequently cite prophetic traditions. I am your partner.” He would also allow vengeance to be taken on his governors. If there was a complaint against a governor, he would bring together the governor and the complainant. If there was a genuine case against (the governor) for which punishment was obligatory, he would punish him.

According to Ya'qūb b. Ibrāhīm—Ismā‘īl b. Ibrāhīm—Sa‘īd al-Jurayrī525—Abū Naḍrah526—Abū Firās:527 ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb made the Friday address and said, “O people, I do not send governors to you to flog you or to take your possessions. I send them to you to teach you your religion and the way you should follow. If anything other than these is done to anyone, he should refer (the matter) to me. By Him in whose hand is my soul, I shall certainly permit the law of retaliation to be used against [any governor].” Up jumped ‘Amr b. al-‘Āṣ and said, “Do you really think you will allow the law of retaliation to be used against any commander appointed over your subjects who disciplines one of them?” (‘Umar) replied, “Yes indeed, I shall certainly allow that. Why not, as I have seen the Messenger of God allow the law of retaliation against himself? Do not beat Muslims and humiliate them; do not keep them long from their families and bring temptation upon them; do not deny them their rights and turn them into infidels; do not settle them among thickets so that you lose them.”528

‘Umar reportedly would himself patrol at night, seeking out the Muslims’ dwellings and personally finding out how they were faring.

527. Abū Firās al-Rabī’ b. Ziyād al-Nahdi has a brief entry in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, XII, 201.
528. Perhaps figurative, “do not take them to places they do not know, where they feel ill at ease, and do not lose control of them.”
The Events of the Year 23

Relevant Information on [‘Umar’s Night Visits]

According to Ibn Bashshār—Abū ‘Āmir—Qurrah b. Khālid—Bakr b. ‘Abdallāh al-Muzani: ‘Umar b. al-Khattāb came to the door of ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. ‘Awf and knocked on it. His wife came and opened it, saying to him, “Do not enter until I have entered and sat down.” So he did as she had said and entered only after she had told him to do so. He then said, “Is there anything [to eat]?” So she brought him some food and he ate it, while ‘Abd al-Rahmān was standing saying his prayers. (‘Umar) asked him to cut them short, so ‘Abd al-Rahmān then recited the blessing [on the Prophet to finish his prayers].

Turning toward him, he asked the Commander of the Faithful what brought him at that time. (‘Umar) replied that there was a group of travelers who had stopped in the area of the market and that he was afraid they might be about to be robbed. [He urged ‘Abd al-Rahmān] to go [with him] and that they should both stand guard over them. So off they went and came to the market. They sat down on some elevated ground to talk and, [when it became dark], saw [the light of] a lamp from afar. ‘Umar said, “Did I not forbid the [use of] lamps after bedtime?” They went off (toward the light) and came across a group of people drinking. (‘Umar) said [to ‘Abd al-Rahmān], however, “You go on your way, for I know who it is.” In the morning (‘Umar) sent for (the culprit) and said, “So and so, you and your pals were drinking last night!” He replied, “How do you know, Commander of the Faithful?” (‘Umar) said, “It was something which I saw with my own eyes.” (The man) replied, “Did God not forbid you to spy [on people]!” (The source) continued: So he forgave him.

According to Bakr b. ‘Abdallāh al-Muzani: ‘Umar banned [the use of] lamps because the mice would take the wicks [to get at the oil] and drop them on the roofs of houses and they

---

would catch fire. The roofs of houses at that time were made of palm-branches.

According to 'Ahmad b. Ḥarb—Muṣ'ab b. 'Abdallāh al-Zubayrī—his father—Rabi'ah b. 'Uthmān—Zayd b. Aslam—his father: I was going with 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb to Harrat Wāqīm, and when we reached Ṣirār there suddenly appeared a fire which had been lit. He said, "I think, Aslam, these people must be riders overtaken by nightfall and cold. Let's go!" So off we went at a good pace and we drew near to them. They were a woman with some young boys, and there was a pot set up over the fire. Her boys were all screaming. 'Umar said, "Greetings, people of the light," not wishing to call them people of the fire. (The woman) returned the greeting. He asked if he might approach. She replied, "Bring us some good or leave [us] alone." ('Umar) asked what was the matter. She told him that nightfall and cold had overtaken them. He asked what was making her children cry. She told him it was hunger. "What is in this pot?" he asked. "Water," she replied, "to keep them quiet until they fall asleep. [I ask] God [to judge between us and 'Umar!]" 'Umar said, "God have mercy upon you, how can 'Umar know anything about you?" She told him, "He is in authority over us, and yet he neglects us." ('Umar) turned to me and said, "Let's go." So off we went at a good pace and reached the flour store. He took out a measure of flour and put a ball of fat into it. Then he said, "Let me carry [all this]." But I replied, "I will carry it on your behalf." But he insisted twice or three times, "Let me carry all this," while I was saying, "I will carry it on your behalf." He finally said to me, "Will you carry

---

534. The lava field (ḥarrah) east of Medina and still known by this name today. See Bilāḍī, Mu'jam, II, 283ff. For this anecdote, see Ṭanṭāwī, Akhbār, 439ff.
535. Three miles from Medina into the area of Harrat Wāqīm. See Hamdānī, Ṣifah, 124; Bilāḍī, Mu'jam, V, 138ff.
536. That is, the source of the story, Zayd's father.
537. Ašḥāb al-nār would indicate those in Hell, so 'Umar uses the expression ašḥāb al-daw' for this family party.
my burden for me on the Day of Resurrection, you wretch?!” So I allowed him to carry [all the food]. He made off and I with him, hastening to get back to [the woman]. He gave her this [food], taking some of the flour and saying to her, “Sprinkle [it] over [the contents of the pot], while I stir it for you.” He also began to blow beneath the pot—now because he had a large beard, I could see the smoke through it—until it was cooked and [the contents of the pot] were fit to eat. He put [the pot] down [off the fire] and said, “Get something for me.” So she brought a large bowl and he emptied [the contents of the pot] into it. He then said, “Feed them, while I flatten [the bread in the bowl] for you.” And he continued to do this until they were satisfied. Then he left what remained of this [food] with her. He got up and I with him. “God give you a good reward,” she said, “you have done better in this matter than the Commander of the Faithful!” He replied, “Speak well [of him], for when you come to the Commander of the Faithful, you will find me there, God willing.” He stepped away from her a little, then faced her and lay down as a wild beast does. I told him that he had other things to do, but he did not speak to me until I saw that the children were romping around and laughing, and then they fell quiet and went to sleep. He then got up, praising God, then he turned to me and said, “Aslam, hunger kept them awake and made them cry. I did not want to leave until I could see them doing what I see [now]!”

When 'Umar wanted to order the Muslims to do something that was of benefit to them or to forbid them doing something that was not, he would begin with his own family. He would come to them, exhorting them and threatening [them] not to go against his order. According to Abū Kurayb Muhammad b. al-'Alā’—Abū Bakr b. 'Ayyāsh—'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar in Medina—Sālim: When 'Umar went up into the minbar and forbade the people from doing something, he would [first] bring together his own family and say, “I have forbidden the people from doing so and so. They all look at you as birds look—that is, at their prey—and I swear in God’s name that if I find anyone of you doing [whatever is forbidden] I shall double his punishment!”

Abū Ja’far [al-Ṭabarī] said: ['Umar] was hard on those of dubious reputations and severe in [seeking out] God’s truth until he extracted it, but easygoing in what was owed to him until it
The Conquest of Iran

was handed over to him and compassionate and full of pity for the weak.

According to 'Ubaydallāh b. Sa‘d al-Zuhrī—he is his paternal uncle—his father—al-Walid b. Kathīr—Muḥammad b. 'Ijlān—Zayd b. Aslam—his father: Some Muslims had a word with ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. ‘Awf and said, “Speak to 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, for he has inspired so much fear in us that indeed we cannot look him in the face.” ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. ‘Awf mentioned this to 'Umar and he said, “Did they really say this?! I was indeed lenient with them to such an extent that I was afraid of God. I became severe with them to such an extent that I was afraid of God. I swear an oath in God’s name that I am more afraid of them than they are of me!”

According to Abu Kurayb—Abū Bakr—'Āṣim [b. Kulayb]: 'Umar appointed someone governor of Egypt. While 'Umar was walking through one of the streets of Medina, he heard someone say, “Good heavens, 'Umar, you appoint someone governor who acts treacherously and you say that you have no responsibility in the matter, when your governor is doing so and so!” So ['Umar] sent for [the governor] and when he arrived gave him a staff, a woolen coat, and sheep, saying to the man whose name was 'Iyād b. Ghanm. “Pasture them, for your father was a shepherd.” Then he called him back and mentioned what had been said [about him]. He added, “What if I send you back!” He returned him to his post, saying, “I must have your word that you will not wear any fine cloth, nor ride an expensive horse [birdhawn].”

According to Abū Kurayb—Abū Usāmah—‘Abdallāh b. al-

541. There is perhaps a play on words here: ghanam is used for sheep—a strange gift anyway—and the governor’s father was called Ghanm. For 'Iyād b. Ghanm, see note 124, above.
542. The word cannot mean “nag” or some such inferior horse here. See Morony, Iraq, 211.
Walid—'Aṣim—Ibn Khuzaymah b. Thābit al-Anṣāri. When 'Umar appointed a governor, he would write him a certificate of investiture that would be witnessed by a group of both Emigrants and Helpers, stipulating that he should not ride an expensive horse, or eat white bread, or wear any fine cloth, or prevent the people’s needs [from being satisfied].

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa’d—Muslim b. Ibrāhīm—Sallām b. Miskīn—'Imrān: When 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb was in need, he would go to the treasurer and ask him for a loan. Sometimes he was short of money, and the treasurer would come to ('Umar) and demand payment of his debt and would insist on its payment. So 'Umar would use his wiles against him. At other times his stipend was disbursed [to him], so he paid back (the debt).

According to Abū 'Amir al-'Agādi—'Isa b. Hafṣ—a man of Banū Salimah—Ibn al-Barā' b. Ma'rūr: 'Umar went out one day to go to the minbar. He complained of being sick and some honey was prescribed for him, there being a skin receptacle [full of it] in the treasury. He said, "If you give me permission [to take] it, I shall do so; otherwise it is forbidden to me."

'Umar's Being Called Commander of the Faithful

Abū Ja'far [al-Ṭabarī] said: The first person to be called Commander of the Faithful was 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb. Then this practice continued and the caliphs have used (the title) to this day.

---

544. Perhaps 'Abdalīh b. al-Walid b. Maymūn, whose date of death is unrecorded in Ibn Ḥajār, Tahdhib, VI, 70.
546. It is not possible to identify this narrator with certainty.
548. It is not possible to identify this narrator with certainty.
550. Salimah b. Sa'd, a tribal division (baṭn) of the Khazraj, one of the two Arab tribes in Medina in early Islam. See Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 358–59; Kābhilah, Mu'tam, II, 537.
551. An unidentified narrator.
The Conquest of Iran

Information on This Matter

According to Aḥmad b. ʿAbd al-Ṣamad al-Anṣārī—Umm ʿAmr bt. Ḥassān al-Kūfiyyah—her father: When ʿUmar assumed power, he was addressed, "O Caliph of the Caliph of the Messenger of God." ʿUmar said, "This is too long winded. When another caliph comes along, they will say, 'O Caliph of the Caliph of the Caliph of the Messenger of God!' But you are the faithful and I am your commander." So he was called Commander of the Faithful. Aḥmad b. ʿAbd al-Ṣamad said: I asked (Umm ʿAmr) how many years she had lived. She replied, "133 years."

According to Ibn Ḥumayd—Yaḥyā b. Wāḍīḥ—Abū Ḥamzah—Jābir: Some one addressed ʿUmar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, "O Caliph of God." He replied, "God turn you away [from such a remark]!" (The man) said, "May God make me your ransom!" (ʿUmar) said, "In that case, God will humiliate you!"

His Institution of the [Islamic] Dating System

Abū Jaʿfar [al-Ṭabarī] said: (ʿUmar) instituted the [Islamic] dating system and recorded it. According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Saʿd—Muḥammad b. ʿUmar: This was in 16 in Rabiʿ I [April 637]. I have already mentioned the reason for his recording this and the circumstances surrounding it. ʿUmar was also the first to date documents and to stamp them with clay.

He was also the first to assemble the people to one imam to lead them in the special Ramaḍān prayers. He sent out written instructions to the provinces to carry this out. According

---

552. An unidentified narrator.
553. An unidentified narrator.
554. Yaḥyā b. Wāḍīḥ has no date of death provided in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhīb, XI, 293ff.
556. Arabic, khāla/ʿa Allāhu bi-ka. A pun with khalifa, caliph, is intended.
557. The man's reply is meant as an apology, but ʿUmar is not appeased.
558. See in the text, Ṭabarī, I, 2480; Translation, XIII, 59.
559. Arabic, tarāwīḥ, the special prayers said after the evening prayer in Ramaḍān. See SEI, s.v. (Wensinck).
The Events of the Year 23

115

to al-Ḥārith— Ibn Sa’d— Muḥammad b. 'Umar: This was in the
year 14 [February 25, 635—February 14, 636]. He also appointed
two public Qurʾān readers, one to lead the men in prayer, the
other the women.

[‘Umar’s] Carrying a Whip and His Instituting the
State Registers 560

He was the first to carry a whip and to use it. He was the first to
institute the state registers for the people in Islam. He recorded
the [names of] people according to their tribes and assigned
them stipends.

According to al-Ḥārith— Ibn Sa’d— Muḥammad b. ‘Umar—
‘Āidh b. Yaḥya 561—Abū al-Ḥuwayrith 562—Jubayr b. al-Ḥuwayrith
b. Nuqayd: 563 ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb sought the advice of the
Muslims on the matter of establishing state registers. ‘Ali b. Abī Ṭālib advised him to distribute all the wealth that accrued to
him every year, without keeping any. ‘Uthmān b. ‘Affān re-
marked on the large amount of wealth that was coming to the
people in ample quantities. He said, “If they are not subjected to
an official census so that you know who has received [wealth]
and those who have not, I am afraid things will get out of hand.”
Al-Walid b. Hishām b. al-Mughirah 564 said to him, “O Com-
mander of the Faithful, I have been to Syria and seen how the
rulers there have instituted a state register and conscripted a
regular army. So you do the same.” [‘Umar] took his advice and
summoned ‘Aqīl b. Abī Ṭālib, 565 Makhramah b. Nawfal, 566 and

560. For diwān, see Poin, Diwān, passim; EI2, s.v. [Duri].
561. An unidentified narrator.
Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VI, 272–73.
563. Jubayr b. al-Ḥuwayrith b. Nuqayd has a brief notice in Ibn al-Athir, Usd,
I, 270.
564. ‘Umar b. Abī Ṭālib was the brother of ‘Ali. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VII,
254. For this account, see Ya’qūbī, Ta‘rikh, II, 153.
565. ‘Umar b. Abī Ṭālib was the brother of ‘Ali. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VII,
254. For this account, see Ya’qūbī, Ta‘rikh, II, 153.
566. Makhramah b. Nawfal b. Abī b. ‘Abd Manāf al-Zuhri was the father of
al-Miswar and the cousin of Sa’d b. Abī Waqqāṣ. He died in 54/674. See Ibn
Jubayr b. Mu't'im, genealogists of Quraysh, telling them to register people according to their ranks. So they made the registers, beginning with Banu Hashim, followed by Abū Bakr and his family, then 'Umar and his family as the first two caliphs. When 'Umar looked into the matter, he said, "I would indeed like it to be thus, but begin with the relatives of the Messenger of God, the closest, then the next, until you register 'Umar in the appropriate place." According to al-Ḥarīth—İbn Sa'd—Muḥammad b. 'Umar—Usāmah b. Zayd b. Aslam—his father—his grandfather: I saw 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, when it was being proposed to him that he should register [the people], with Banū Taym coming after Banū Ḥāshim and Banū 'Adi coming after Banū Taym, and I could hear him say, "Put 'Umar down in the appropriate place. Begin with the closest related to the Messenger of God, then the next." Then Banū 'Adi came to 'Umar and said, "You are the caliph of the Messenger of God." He replied, "Or the caliph of Abū Bakr and Abū Bakr was the caliph of the Messenger of God." "This is so," they replied, "What if you placed yourself where these people [who are carrying out the registration] place you!" "Excellent, excellent, Banū 'Adi," exclaimed ['Umar], "You want to take advantage of my position!" You want me to transfer my good fortune to you. No, indeed, [you must wait] until the call comes to you, even if you come last in the register, even if you are registered after everyone else. I have two

567. That is, the Prophet's clan, a division of Quraysh.
568. 'Umar is thus refusing to allow his position as caliph to promote his own name in the register and is insisting that relationship to the Prophet alone should be the criterion of order of listing.
569. Banū Taym b. Murrah, the branch of Quraysh to which Abū Bakr al-Siddiq, the first caliph, belonged, hence its position in the register after Banū Ḥāshim, the Prophet's branch. See Zubayri, Nasab Quraysh, 275ff.; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 135ff.; Kaḥḥālah, Mu'jam, I, 138.
570. Banū 'Adī b. Ka'b, the branch of Quraysh to which 'Umar belonged, hence its position in the register after Banū Taym and Banū Ḥāshim, the branches of Abū Bakr and Muḥammad, respectively. See Zubayri, Nasab Quraysh, 346ff.; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 130ff.; Kaḥḥālah, Mu'jam, II, 766.
571. 'Umar's exclamation [bakhin bakhin] to his own tribe, Banū 'Adī, is sarcastic. The Arabic then reads aradtum al-akla 'alā ẓohni, literally, "You want to eat off my back!"
colleagues who have gone down a [particular] road already. If I am at variance with them, I myself will be led off in another direction. Indeed, we have achieved excellence only in this world, and we can only hope for God's reward in the hereafter for what we have done through Muḥammad. He is our nobility; his family are the noblest of the Arabs, then the closest related to him, then the next. The Arabs are noble through the Messenger of God. Some of them may share many ancestors with him. We ourselves meet his line of descent after [going back] only a few generations, then do not diverge from it as far back as Adam. Moreover, if non-Arabs carry out [good] deeds and we do not, then they are nearer to Muḥammad than we on the Day of Resurrection. Let no one rely on close relationship, rather let him act for God's reward. For he whose effort falls short cannot get ahead by means of his ancestry."

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muḥammad b. 'Umar—Ḥizām b. Hishām al-Ka'bi—his father: I saw 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb carry the Khuzā'ah register and stop at Qudayd. (Khuzā'ah) would come to him there, where all the women, virgin or otherwise, came to him and he would hand over stipends directly to them, then move on and stop in 'Usfān where he would do the same also. [All this he did] until he died.


572. That is, the Prophet and Abū Bakr before him, whose policies, he is explaining, he must at all costs follow.


574. Ḥizām b. Hishām al-Ka'bi is unidentified.

575. A large tribal group of al-Azd inhabiting the general area of Mecca. See Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 331; Hamdānī, Šifah, 120, 179, 211; Kaḥbālah, Mu'jam, I, 338–40.

576. An agricultural area north of Mecca, 23 miles from 'Usfān (see next note). See Hamdānī Šifah, 120, 185; al-Manāṣik, 414, 457, etc.; Bilādī, Mu'jam, VII, 97.

577. An area of cultivation 36 miles from Mecca. See Hamdānī, Šifah, 185; Bilādī, Mu'jam, VI, 100.

578. An unidentified narrator.
Ismā‘il b. Muḥammad b. Sa‘d—al-Sā‘ib b. Yazid: I heard ‘Umar say three times, “By God, there is no other god but He!” [He added], “Everyone has a right to some of this [community] wealth, whether he has been granted it or not. No one has more right to it than another, except a slave. I am exactly like other people in [this matter of wealth]. But we [are eligible] according to our ranks [as derived] from God’s book and our allotments from the Messenger of God. [It is] a man’s achievement in Islam, his precedence in Islam, his usefulness in Islam, and his need [that count]. If indeed I remain alive, the shepherd where he is on the mountain of Ṣan‘ā’ shall certainly receive his share of this wealth!”

Ismā‘il b. Muḥammad said that he mentioned this to his father and he knew the account also.

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa‘d—Muḥammad b. ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh—al-Zuhrī—al-Sā‘ib b. Yazid: I discovered that ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb had some horses that had the following brand on their thighs: To be used only in God’s cause.

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa‘d—Muḥammad b. ‘Umar—Qays b. al-Rabī‘—‘Aṭā‘ b. al-Sā‘ib—Zādān—Salmān: ‘Umar said to him, “Am I a king or a caliph?” Salmān replied, “If you collect from Muslim territory 1 dirham—or less or more—then you put it to use other than for what it is by right intended, you are a king, not a caliph.” ‘Umar wept.

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa‘d—Muḥammad b. ‘Umar—
Usāmah b. Zayd—Nāfš, the client of Āl al-Zubayr.⁵⁸⁵ I heard Abū Hurayrah say, "God have mercy on Ibn Ḥantamah."⁵⁸⁶ I saw him in the Year of the Distruption⁵⁸⁷ carrying on his back two provision bags with a skin of olive oil in his hand. He and Aslam were taking it in turns. When he saw me, he said, 'Where are you coming from, Abū Hurayrah?' I told him from near at hand, and I began to take my turn to carry. So we all eventually came to Şirār where there were about twenty isolated tents of Muḥārib.⁵⁸⁸ 'Umar said, 'What has brought you here?' They replied it was exhaustion. They brought out for us some broiled carrion skin that they were eating and some powdered old bones that they were scooping into their mouths with their hands. I saw 'Umar throw his upper garment [over his shoulder], then adjust his waist wrapper. He continued cooking for them until they were satisfied. Then he sent Aslam to Medina and he brought some stallion camels on which he mounted them and set them down in al-Jabbānah.⁵⁸⁹ He then gave them clothes, visiting them and others [in similar circumstances] frequently until God relieved the people of this drought."

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muḥammad b. 'Umar—Mūsā b. Ya'qūb⁵⁹⁰—his paternal uncle—Hishām b. Khalid:⁵⁹¹ I heard 'Umar b. al-Khallab say, "None of you (women) should sprinkle flour [into it] before the water is hot. Then you can sprinkle a little at a time and stir it in with a stirrer. This makes it more abundant and it is less apt to go lumpy."

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa'd—Muḥammad b. Muṣ'ab al-

---

⁵⁸⁵. Āl al-Zubayr b. al-'Awāmm is a tribal group [bātn] of Banū Asad b. 'Abd al-'Uzza of Quraysh. See Zubayrī, Nasab Quraysh, 236ff.; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 121–22, Kahbālah, Mu'jam, II, 467.

⁵⁸⁶. Ḥantamah was 'Umar's mother, so Ibn Ḥantamah means 'Umar himself. See page 95, above.

⁵⁸⁷. 'Ām al-Ramādah (the "Year of Destruction") occurred in the year 17 or 18/638–639, a year in which much destruction took place as a result of drought. See Lane, Lexicon, III, 1154–55, Taṣṣawi, Akhbār, 140.

⁵⁸⁸. Muḥārib is probably Muḥārib b. Fihr of Adnān, but Kahbālah, Mu'jam, III, 1042–44, lists several tribes of this name.

⁵⁸⁹. I take this to be a place name here, as Bilādī (Mu'jam, II, 115) indicates that the area near the burial ground of Medina was known by this name. Apart from "burial ground", the word jabbānah also means "place of prayer."

⁵⁹⁰. Mūsā b. Ya'qūb al-Zam'ī's death date is not recorded. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, X, 378ff.

⁵⁹¹. An unidentified narrator.
Qargasâni⁵⁹²—Abû Bakr b. 'Abdallah b. Abî Maryam⁵⁹³—Râshid b. Sa’d:⁵⁹⁴ 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb was brought some wealth and he began to distribute it among the people who all thronged around him. Sa’d b. Abî Waqqās pushed his way roughly through the people and reached 'Umar. (The latter) assailed him with his whip, saying, "You come here showing no respect for God's authority on earth! I want to teach you that God's authority will show you no respect!"

According to al-Ḥârith—Ibn Sa’d—Muḥammad b. 'Umar—'Umar b. Sulaymān b. Abî Ḥathmah⁵⁹⁵—his father: al-Shafâ bt. 'Abdallah⁵⁹⁶ said, "I saw some young men walking along at a moderate pace, talking softly." She asked who they were and was told they were ascetics. She said, "When 'Umar spoke, he made [people] hear; when he walked, he moved quickly, when he beat [someone], he brought pain. He in truth was the ascetic!"

According to 'Umar—'Ali b. Muḥammad [al-Madā‘ini]—'Abdallah b. 'Âmir: 'Umar helped a man carry something, so the man blessed him, saying, "May your sons be of benefit to you, Commander of the Faithful!" ('Umar) replied, "Rather may God enable me to do without them!"

According to 'Umar—'Ali b. Muḥammad—'Umar b. Mujâshi':⁵⁹⁷ 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb said, "Strength in what one does [comes only] when you do not put off today's deed until tomorrow. Trustworthiness [comes only] when what is kept secret does not run counter to what is made public. Fear God; piety [comes only] through fear; anyone fearing God will be preserved by Him."⁵⁹⁸

— 120 —

The Conquest of Iran

---

⁵⁹². Muḥammad b. Muṣ‘ab al-Qargasâni’s nisbah I vocalize from the Leiden text and from Yâqūt (Ma‘jam, IV, 327), who briefly mentions a place called Qargasân. His date of death is given in Ibn Ḥajar’s Tahdhib, IX, 458–60, as 280 or 288/893 or 901. Cf. Translation, I, 267 n. 633.

⁵⁹³. According to Ibn Ḥajar’s Tahdhib, XII, 28–30, Abû Bakr b. 'Abdallah died in 256/870, but this does not find universal support. Cf. Translation, I, 217 n. 350.

⁵⁹⁴. It is not possible to identify this narrator with certainty.

⁵⁹⁵. An unidentified narrator.

⁵⁹⁶. An unidentified narrator.

⁵⁹⁷. An unidentified narrator.

⁵⁹⁸. Arabic, man yattaqi Allâha yaqi-hi.
According to 'Umar—'Ali—'Awānah\textsuperscript{599}—al-Sha'bi and someone other than 'Awānah, one adding to what the other had to say: 'Umar used to wander around the markets, reciting the Qur'ān and making judgments among the people wherever litigants caught up with him.

According to 'Umar—'Ali—Muḥammad b. Šāliḥ\textsuperscript{600}—Mūsā b. 'Uqbah\textsuperscript{601} A group of people came to 'Umar and said, "Our family is large and the burden is heavy. Increase our stipends." He replied, "You are responsible (for your own problems)! From God's wealth you have married fellow wives and have taken servants. Yes indeed, I would like to be on a ship\textsuperscript{602} with you out at sea, traveling east and west. It would not then be difficult for those (on board) to appoint one of them as their leader. If he went straight, they would follow him. If he deviated from the right course, they would kill him." Ṭālhah said, "Why did you not say, 'If he deviated, they would dismiss him.'?" (Urmar) replied, "No, killing is a better deterrent to anyone coming after him. Beware of the young man of Quraysh and the son of their nobleman\textsuperscript{603} who always sleeps content and who laughs when angry, dealing with those above him and those below him [in the same way]."

According to 'Umar—'Ali—'Abdallāh b. Dāwūd al-Wāṣiṭī\textsuperscript{604}—Zayd b. Āsīm: 'Umar said, "We used to reckon that someone lending [money] was stingy, but it was only showing friendly concern."

\textsuperscript{599} 'Awānah b. al-Ḥakam al-Kalbi died ca. 150/767. See Rosenthal, Historiography, 89ff.

\textsuperscript{600} Muḥammad b. Šāliḥ b. Dīnār died in 168/785. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IX, 223ff.

\textsuperscript{601} Mūsā b. 'Uqbah, the famous maghāzī writer, died in 141/759. See Duri, Rise, 32–33, Guillaume, Life, xvi, xlii etc.; Rosenthal, Historiography, 131ff., 393ff.

\textsuperscript{602} Although there seems to be no convincing support for the Cairo reading \textit{fi safinatin} [singular] rather than the Leiden \textit{fi safinatayn} [dual], I accept the former as it clearly makes more sense and the following verb \textit{tadhhabu} is singular.

\textsuperscript{603} The reference here eludes me.

\textsuperscript{604} He has a short notice in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, V, 200–1, although no date of death is given.

\textsuperscript{605} Or "[a means of] sharing [wealth]."
According to 'Umar—'Ali—Ibn Da'ib—Abū Ma'bad al-Aslami—Ibn 'Abbās: 'Umar said to a group of Quraysh, "I have heard that you are all sitting apart, no two of you sitting together, until it is asked who so-and-so’s friends are, who are the people who usually sit with so-and-so. The result is that meetings are being avoided. I swear by God that this will quickly damage your faith and your honor and will quickly damage also the state of friendship among you. It is indeed as if I can see those who will come after you saying, ‘This is so-and-so’s opinion; they have divided Islam.’ Make your meetings accessible to you all and sit together, for this will make your fellowship last longer and increase your respect for one another. O God, they have had enough of me and I of them. I am fed up with myself and they are fed up with me also. I do not know through which one of us the [real] calamity will come about. But I am aware that they have others on their side, so take me unto Yourself!"

According to 'Umar—'Ali—Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad—his father: 'Abdallāh b. Abī Rabī‘ah took delivery of some mares in Medina, but 'Umar forbade him [to keep them]. He was urged to allow him, [but] he said, “I shall only allow him [to keep them] if he brings in fodder from outside Medina.” So he kept them tethered and brought in fodder from some land he had in the Yemen.

According to 'Umar—'Ali—Abū Ismā‘il al-Hamdānī—Muja‘ild: I heard that some people mentioned a certain man to 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, saying, ‘Commander of the Faithful, [he is]
excellent; he knows nothing of evil.” ['Umar] replied, “In this case there is more likelihood of evil happening to him!”

Some Excerpts from His Addresses

According to 'Umar—'Ali—Abū Ma'shar—Ibn al-Munkadir and others, and Abū Mu'ādh al-Anṣāri—al-Zuhri, and Yazīd b. 'Iyāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr, and 'Ali b. Mujāhid—Ibn Ishāq—Yazīd b. 'Iyāq—'Abdallāh b. Abī Ishāq—Yazīd b. Rūmān—'Urwah b. al-Zubayr. 'Umar delivered an address. He praised and extolled God in a worthy manner. Then he reminded the people of God and the last day. He then said,

O people, I have been appointed over you; were it not for the hope that I shall prove to be the best of you for you, the toughest on you, and best able of you to undertake your constantly changing and preoccupying affairs, I would not have undertaken this [responsibility] from you. Waiting to meet the [day of] reckoning for taking your rights as I do and placing them where I do and for conducting myself among you as I do is enough to preoccupy and sadden 'Umar. My Lord is the One whose help must be sought. For 'Umar no longer trusts in strength and strategem if God does not continue to extend to him His mercy, help and support.

613. The text of De Goeje's Selection ends at this point. See note 394.
614. Muḥammad b. al-Munkadir died ca. 130/748. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IX, 473–75; Sezgin, GAS, I, 65.
615. His date of death is not given in the biographies. He has an entry in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IV, 168–69.
618. I have retained this name in translation, although there appears to be dittography here.
619. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Ishāq died in 129/746. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, V, 148. This could, however, be dittography, the “'Abdallāh b.” from 'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr and the “Ishāq” from Ibn Ishāq.
621. 'Urwah b. al-Zubayr, the famous early historian, died ca. 95/714. See Duri, Rise, 76–8 and passim; Rosenthal, Historiography, 130ff., 395; Sezgin GAS, I, 278ff.
God has put me in charge of your affairs, because I am aware of what is most advantageous for you in your present situation. I ask God to assist me to carry out (this task) and to preserve me as I do it as He has preserved me in other (tasks) and to inspire me with justice when I make distributions among you in the way He has commanded. I am a Muslim, but am a weak servant, except for as long as God assists me. What I have undertaken in my position as your caliph will never change anything of my nature, God willing. Greatness belongs to God, not to (His) servants. Let none of you say that 'Umar has changed for the worse since he took office. I shall ascertain what is right by myself and I shall proceed [on this basis]. I shall explain to you what I am doing. So any man who has a need, or who suffers any oppression, or who blames us for our behavior, should inform me. I am only a man from among you. You must show piety toward God in your secret and open dealings, and as far as what is inviolable and your honor are concerned. Proclaim what is right on your own and do not compel one another to seek litigation before me, for I show no particular leniency in my dealings with any person. Your welfare is dear to me; your criticism is of concern to me; you are people the general mass of whom are settled dwellers in God's land and people of a region without crops and livestock except for what God provides. God has promised you much bounty. I am responsible for the trust placed in me and for the position I am in. I shall personally inspect closely what faces me at the present time, God willing. I shall not delegate responsibility to anyone else. I can do only what is remote from (what immediately faces me at the present time) with the help of trusty supporters and those who give good advice from among you to the people at large. I shall not place my trust in anyone else's hands, God willing.
Another Address

After praising and extolling God and blessing the Prophet, ('Umar) said,

O people, some greed [breeds a sense of] poverty; some despair [of not getting what one wants breeds a sense of] freedom from want. You bring together what you do not consume and you hope for what you do not attain. You have been placed for a defined period of time in a "deceiving abode." You were dealt with through the revelation in the time of the Messenger of God: those who kept things secret were dealt with according to their secrecy. Those who did things openly were dealt with according to their openness. But [now] show us the best of your character, while God knows your secrets well. For those who show us what is bad, yet claim that what they keep secret is good, will not be believed by us; as for those who show us something good openly, we shall think good of them. You should know that some avarice is a part of hypocrisy. "Spend what is good for yourselves; those who are saved from their own avarice, they are the successful ones."

O people, make good your abode, put your affairs aright, and fear God, your Lord. Do not dress your womenfolk in fine cotton clothes (qabāṭī), for [even] if they are not transparent, yet they will allow [the shape of their bodies] to be visualized.

O people, I would indeed like to be delivered on a completely even basis, neither to my advantage nor to my disadvantage. I do also hope that, however long I am permitted to live, I do what is right among you, God willing, and that no Muslim will remain—even if he is in his own home—to whom his right and his share of God’s wealth has not come, nor [that] he exerts himself

622. That is, the lower world. See Qur’ān, III:185.
623. The texts read shay'ān, which is emended to sayyī'ān.
for it without his having it allotted to him. Put your wealth that God has provided for you in good order. A little [gained] gently is better than much violently. Being killed is one form of death that afflicts the pious and the impious alike. The [true] martyr is he who sacrifices himself [to seek God's reward]. If one of you wants a stallion camel, he should go for a large, tall one. He should strike it with his stick and if he finds it is spirited, he should buy it.\textsuperscript{625}

\textit{Another Address}

God has imposed upon you gratitude and instituted the pilgrimage for you as part of the bounty of the hereafter and this world that He has provided for you, without your asking Him or wishing it from Him. He created you, after you were nothing, for Himself and for you to worship Him. He had the power to make you subservient to the weakest of His creation, but rather He made subservient to you the general mass of His creation. He did not make you subservient to anything other than He. And He “subjected to you what is in the heavens and on earth and made His favors abound upon you, both open and hidden.”\textsuperscript{626} “He carried you by land and sea.”\textsuperscript{627} “And He gave you of good things, perchance you might be grateful.”\textsuperscript{628} Then He made for you hearing and sight. Of God's favors to you are those that He granted to mankind in general and others that He granted exclusively to the people of your faith. These general and special favors are continued during your turn of fortune, your time, and your generation. None of these favors has come to anyone in particular without, if he were to share out what he received among all the people, their

\begin{footnotes}
\item[625] The abrupt change of subject may indicate that the camel here is metaphorical, rather than real. The meaning would therefore be: if you want something in life, go for the best and do all you can to acquire it.
\item[626] Qur'an, XXXI:20.
\item[627] After Qur'an, XVII:70.
\item[628] Qur'an, VIII:26.
\end{footnotes}
The Events of the Year 23

gratitude for it being difficult for them and their right to have it overburdening them, except with God's help along with faith in God and His Messenger. You are appointed successors on earth and conquerors of its people. God has given your faith victory. No other community who differs from you in faith is left except two: one rendered submissive to Islam and to those who follow it, they paying you tribute, while (the Muslims) take the best of their livelihood, what they have earned and [produced with] the sweat of their brow; they must work hard, while you have the benefit; they have two communities waiting for God's battles and attacks every day and night. God has filled their hearts with terror. They have no refuge to which they can flee or an escape by means of which they can guard against attack. God's armies came upon them suddenly and right into their own territory. [All this you have been granted] along with an abundance of food, a pouring out of wealth, the repeated dispatch of [victorious] troops and the [successful] defense of the frontier areas with God's permission, together excellent general security better than which this community had not experienced since Islam came into existence—God be praised!—along with the great conquests in every land. With all this, what might the gratitude of the grateful, the utterances of those who mention [God] and the striving of those who strive, along with these favors that are innumerable, incalculable and the debt that cannot be paid except with God's help, mercy, and kindness, achieve? We ask God—there is no other than He—who has conferred this upon us to grant us that we act in obedience to Him and hasten to do what pleases Him.

Remember, o servants of God, God's favor among you and seek to have an increase in His favor to you and in

629. That is, the Persians in the east, most of whom have been subjugated by the Muslims.
630. That is, the Byzantines in the west, so far subjugated only in Syria.
your meeting places "in twos and singly."\textsuperscript{631} God said to Moses, "Bring out your people from the darkness into the light and remind them of God's days."\textsuperscript{632} To Muhammad he said, "Remember when you were few and considered weak in the land."\textsuperscript{633} Even if, when you were weak and deprived of the goodness of this lower world, you had been following a part of the truth, believing in it, secure in it with knowledge of God and His faith, and thereby hoping for goodness after death, this would be so. But [in fact] you struggled the most for a livelihood [in this world] and were [at the same time] the most confirmed in your ignorance of God. If (Islam) that He [sent] to save you had come without affluence in this world, but were nonetheless a security for you in the hereafter to which you will return, while you continued to struggle for your livelihood as you had before, you would still do your best to hold fast to your share of Islam and put it above others. [All the more is this true], as He has [in fact] combined for you the excellence of the lower world and the bounty of the hereafter. He [then] among you who wishes to combine it for him, I would remind of God who intervenes between [a man and his] heart, charging you to recognize God's right and act accordingly, to force yourselves to obey Him and to combine your pleasure in His favors with a fear of them and their being removed and a feeling of unease because of them and their being changed. For there is nothing that deprives you more of favor than not being grateful for it. Gratitude is a safeguard against [what] the changing fortunes of time [will bring about], a way of increasing favor and establishing a claim to more. [All] this is for God binding upon me in the orders I give you and in the prohibitions I make.

\textsuperscript{631} Qur'\‘an, XXXIV:46.  
\textsuperscript{632} Qur'\‘an, XIV:5.  
\textsuperscript{633} Qur'\‘an, VIII:26.
Those Who Have Lamented and Elegized ‘Umar—Some of the Elegies Written about Him

According to ‘Umar—‘Ali—Abū ‘Abdallāh al-Burjumī634—Hishām b. ‘Urwhah:635 A woman weeping for ‘Umar said, “Alas, my heart burns for ‘Umar; a burning sensation that has spread and filled all mankind!” Another woman said, “Alas, my heart burns for ‘Umar; a burning sensation that has spread until it has become known throughout the whole of mankind!”

According to ‘Umar—‘Ali—Ibn Da’b and Sa‘īd b. Khālid636—Ṣāliḥ b. Kaysān—al-Mughirah b. Shu‘bah: When ‘Umar died, Ibnat Abī Ḥathmah637 said, “Alas for ‘Umar; he straightened whatever was crooked; he made better anyone suffering pain; he put an end to dissensions; he revived the [true] practices [of religion]; he went out in clean clothes, free from blemish.”

According to al-Mughirah b. Shu‘bah: When ‘Umar was buried, I came to ‘Ali, wanting to hear something about ‘Umar from him. He came out shaking his head and his beard, having washed himself and wrapped himself in a garment and not doubting that the caliphate would finally be his. He said, “God have mercy on Ibn al-Khāṭṭāb! Ibnat Abī Ḥathmah was right. [In death,] he has taken away the good of [the lower world]639 and escaped from its evil. Oh indeed, she did not [herself] speak; but rather she was inspired.”

‘Āṭikah bt. Zayd b. ‘Amr recited the following about ‘Umar b. al-Khāṭṭāb:640

---

634. An unidentified narrator.
636. It is not possible to identify this narrator with certainty.
637. She is unidentified.
638. The speaker delivers her elegy in rhymed prose: al-awad (crooked)/al-amad (suffering pain); al-fitan (dissensions)/al-sunan (religious practices); al-thawb (clothing)/al-ayb (blemish).
639. I take this vague feminine pronoun to refer to dunyā.
Fayruz⁶⁴¹—may his wealth not be abundant!—has caused me distress by [the death of] one full of honor,⁶⁴² who recited the Book and was obedient to God; Compassionate to those closest [to him], tough against his enemies, someone to trust in times of bad fortune and answering [the demands of his people]. Whenever he gave his word, his deeds did not belie his word; [he was] swift to [perform] good deeds, and not with a frown.⁶⁴³

She also recited as follows:⁶⁴³

O my eye, shed all your tears copiously and weary not of [weeping] for the noble imam. Fate brought me distress with [the death of] the horseman wearing the badge of courage on the day when there was agitation and [much] to-ing and fro-ing. [He was] the protection of his people, their helper against Fate, the succor of the afflicted and the deprived. Tell those who are happy and those in distress, "Die! Fate has given ('Umar) Death's cup from which to drink."

Another woman recited the following, weeping over him:⁶⁴⁴

The women of the tribe will weep for you; grieving, they will weep, Scratching their faces, [previously] like [shining] dinars, [all] pure, And wearing clothes of grief after their finery (qaşabiyyāt).

---

⁶⁴¹. That is, Abū Lu’lu’ah, the assassin of ‘Umar; see note 399.
⁶⁴². That is, ‘Umar himself.
⁶⁴³. The meter is khaṣif. See Ibn al-Athir, Kāmil, III, 30.
⁶⁴⁴. The meter is hāzaj.
Some of 'Umar's Meritorious Deeds Not Previously Recorded

According to 'Umar b. Shabbah—'Ali b. Muḥammad [al-Madā'ini]—Ibn Ju'dubah—Ismā'il b. Abi Ḥakīm—Sa'id b. al-Musayyab: 'Umar went on the pilgrimage and when he was at Dajnān, he said, “There is no god but God, the Great, the Sublime, the Giver of what He wishes to whomsoever He wishes. I used to pasture the camels of al-Khaṭṭāb in this wadi, wearing a woolen tunic. (My father) was a harsh man and used to wear me out when I was working and beat me when I slacked off. Now I find myself in a situation in which there is no one between me and God.” Then he quoted the following verses as an example [of his own situation]:

There is nothing of what you see whose joy lasts; God endures, whereas wealth and children perish.

His treasures have never been of any avail to any Persian ruler, and 'Ād have tried to achieve eternal life, but they were not eternal.

There is no Solomon, despite the fact that the winds swept for him, while men and jinn mixed together hastened [to his command].

Where are the rulers to whose gifts riders came from all directions?
At the inevitable pool of death there [we] must drink one day, as [others already] have.

---

645. Ibn Ju'dubah is Yazīd b. 'Iyāḍ. See note 616, above.
647. Sa'id b. al-Musayyab died ca. 94/713. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IV, 84–88; Sezgin, GAS, I, 276.
650. One of the pre-Islamic tribes mentioned in the Qur'ān who refused to accept the message to abandon their gods and worship God. See Qur'ān, XXVI:129, where they are accused by their messenger, Hūd, of “taking to yourselves strongholds, perchance you might live forever.”
651. In the Qur'ān (XXXIV:13) Solomon is given the wind by God, and (XXXVIII:36) God made the wind subservient to him.
According to 'Umar b. Shabbah—'Ali—Abū al-Walid al-Makki:652 While 'Umar was sitting down a lame man came up to him leading a limping she-camel. He stopped and recited the following.653

You have been made our ruler whereas we are the subjects; you, 'Umar, are summoned by virtue of your mark of distinction.

When the evil of an evil day falls on its evil men, [then, by contrast] Muḍar654 has today placed upon you [the glory] of their noble deeds.

['Umar] exclaimed, "There is no might and power except in God!"655 The man complained that his she-camel was lame. So 'Umar took the she-camel, gave him a red camel as a fresh mount and provisioned him, and he went on his way. 'Umar left later on pilgrimage, and while he was traveling along, he came across a rider who was reciting the following.656

No one has ruled over us like you, Ibn al-Khaṭṭāb, [no one] more beneficent to those distant [from you], nor to his friends, after the Prophet, him of the Book.

So 'Umar prodded him with a stick he was carrying and said, "What about Abū Bakr?"


---

653. The meter is ṭawil.
654. Muḍar is a huge tribal confederation amounting to a very large proportion of all the northern Arab tribes known collectively as 'Adnān. See Kaḥḥālah, Mu'jam, III, 1107.
655. 'Umar is apologizing for not having done his duty.
656. The meter is rajaz.
657. 'Abd al-Malik b. Nawfal b. Musāḥiṣ has a brief notice without date of death in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VI, 428.
658. 'Utbah b. Abī Sufoyān b. Ḥarb was the brother of Mu'āwiya.2
659. This is in all probability the large tribal group in the Mecca area, Kinānah b. Khuzaymah. See Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, i1ff., 180; Zubayrī, Nasab Quraysh, ioff.; Kaḥḥālah, Mu'jam, III, 996–98.
arrived back, bringing some wealth with him. (‘Umar) asked him what it was. He said it was wealth he had taken with him and with which he had engaged in business. (‘Umar) said, “What are you doing taking wealth with you in this way?” (‘Umar) put it in the treasury. Now when ‘Uthmān became caliph, he said to Abū Sufyān,660 “If you demand what ‘Umar took from ‘Utbah, I shall return it to him.” Abū Sufyān replied, “If you contradict your predecessor, the people will think badly of you. Beware of going against your predecessor, lest your successor go against you!”

According to al-Sari—Shu‘ayb—Sayf—al-Rabi‘ b. al-Nu‘mān,661 Abū al-Mujālīd Jarād b. ‘Amr,662 Abū ‘Uthmān, Abū Ḥārīthah,663 and Abū ‘Amr,664 the client of Ibrāhīm b. Ṭalḥah—Zayd b. Aslam—his father: Hind bt. ‘Utbah665 paid her respects to ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb and asked him for a loan from the treasury of 4,000 [dirhams] with which to engage in business, and at the same time making herself responsible for [the sum]. (‘Umar) lent her the money and she took it off to the territory of Kalb,667 where she bought and sold. She heard that Abū Sufyān and ‘Amr b. Abī Sufyān668 had gone to Mu‘āwiyah, so she left Kalb territory and came to see Mu‘āwiyah. [This was when Abū Sufyān had already divorced her.] “What brings you here, mother?” Mu‘āwiyah asked. She replied, “To see you, my son. [You know that] ‘Umar works only [to please] God. Your father, [I note], has already been to you, and I was afraid that you will give him all sorts of things, as he is worthy of this. But people

660. Abū Sufyān b. Ḥarb was the father of ‘Utbah.
662. An unidentified narrator.
663. An unidentified narrator.
664. An unidentified narrator.
665. An unidentified narrator.
666. Hind bt. ‘Utbah, wife of Abū Sufyān, mother of Mu‘āwiyah and ‘Amr [see note 668, below].
667. There are several tribes of this name, but one can perhaps assume Kalb b. Wabarah is meant here, a tribal group [batn] of Qudā‘ah, by origin a southern, Qaṭānī tribe. If this is the case, Hind would have been conducting her business in the northern Hijāz and the Jawf area in the north of the Peninsula. Ibn Ḥazm, Jamā’ah, 455ff.; Kahālah, Mu‘jam, III, 990–92; El2, s.v. “Kalb” [Fück/Dixon].
will not know the source of the wherewithal you had to make the gift, so they will blame you severely, and 'Umar will too and so will never absolve her of the [money] owed [to the treasury].” So [Mu‘awiyah] sent [only] a hundred dinars [from Hind’s money] to his father and brother ['Amr], clothed them, and gave them mounts. But 'Amr considered this too much and Abū Sufyān said, “Do not think [it is too much], for Hind has been involved in this gift and was present at a discussion [about it].” So they all returned and Abū Sufyān said to Hind, “Did you make any profit?” “God knows best!” she replied, “I [still] have some business in Medina.” When she reached Medina and sold [her goods], she complained about what had been paid out to them. 'Umar said to her, “If the money [you owe] were mine, I would leave it to you. But it is the Muslims’ money and this is a discussion in which Abū Sufyān has been involved.” So ['Umar] sent for (Abū Sufyān) and detained him until she paid [the money] in full. ['Umar] asked [Abū Sufyān], “How much did Mu‘awiyah give you?” He replied, “A hundred dinars.”

According to 'Umar—'Ali—Maslamah b. Muhārīb—Khālid al-Hadhhdhā—'Abdallāh b. Abi Ṣa‘ṣa‘ah—al-Āhnaf: 'Abdallāh b. 'Umayr came to 'Umar as he was assigning state stipends to the people. Now ('Abdallāh’s) father was killed a martyr at the battle of Hunayn, so he said, “O Commander of the Faithful, give me a stipend.” But ['Umar] paid no attention to him. So he gave ['Umar] a prod. 'Umar cried, “Ouch!” and then turned to him and said, “Who are you?” He told him he was 'Abdallāh b. 'Umayr, so ['Umar] said [to his servant], “Yarfa’, give him 600.” He gave him 500, but ['Abdallāh] did not accept it and said, “The Commander of the Faithful has given orders that I receive 600.” And he went back and told ['Umar]. He said, “Give him 600 and a complete garment,

---

669. An unidentified narrator.
670. An unidentified narrator.
671. 'Abdallāh b. Abi Ṣa‘ṣa‘ah has a brief entry in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, V, 265.
672. It is not possible to identify this man with certainty.
673. This battle took place in 8/629 and the Prophet and his Muslim forces defeated a Meccan army. Hunayn is a wadi only about 10 miles from Mecca itself. See Tabari, I, 165ff.; Ibn Hishām, Sirah, II, pp. 442ff.; Guillaume, Life, 566ff. For the location of the wadi, see Bilādī, Mu’jam, III, 70–73.
Yarfa." So the latter did. ('Abdallāh) put the garment on and threw away what he had been wearing. But 'Umar said to him, "My son, take these clothes of yours for serving your family and [keep] this one to make you look smart!"

According to 'Umar—'Ali—Abū al-Walīd al-Makki—one of the sons of Ṭalḥah—Ibn 'Abbās: I went with 'Umar on one of his journeys. We were traveling one night, and I came near to him as he struck the front of his saddle with his whip and recited the following:

You have lied, by the house of God! Will Ahmad be killed when we have not yet come to his defense with spears and arrows? Shall we surrender him before we are slain around him and neglect our sons and spouses?

Then he said, "I ask God for forgiveness [for implying ill of the Prophet's house]!" He went on without speaking for a little while, then he recited as follows:

No she-camel has borne on her saddle
one more pious and more faithful when he makes a covenant than Muhammad,
One more generous to give away a red and black striped garment before it is worn out
and who gives away more thoroughbred horses.

Then he said, "I ask God for forgiveness, Ibn 'Abbās! What prevented 'Ali from coming with us?" I replied, "I do not know." He continued, "Ibn 'Abbās, your father is the paternal uncle of the Messenger of God. You are his cousin. What has kept your people from [putting] you [in authority]?

674. The poem was composed by Abū Ṭālib after the battle of Badr. See Ibn Hishām, Sīrah, II, 24. The meter is fawil.

675. The poem was uttered by the dying 'Ubaydah b. al-Ḥārith after the battle of Badr, in fact quoting Abū Ṭālib's composition. The Sīrah version (Ibn Hishām, II, 24) reads yubzā Muhammadun, that is, "will Muhammad be maltreated," rather than the Tabārī text yuqtalu Ahmādu. The "Ahmad" of the text means "Muhammad." See also Wāqidi, Maghāzi, I, 70.

676. By Anas b. Zunaym al-Dili; see Guillaume, Life, 559. The meter is fawil.
like your being put in charge of them.” I said, “Why, when we are good to them?” (‘Umar) replied, “O God, [grant] forgiveness. They do not like you to combine the prophethood and the caliphate among yourselves, lest it bring about self-aggrandizement and pride. You will perhaps say, ‘Abū Bakr did this.’ No indeed, but Abū Bakr did the most resolute thing he could. If he had made [the caliphate] yours, he would not have benefited you despite your close ties of relationship [to the Prophet]. Recite to me what the poet of poets, Zuhayr, composed:677

When Qays b. ‘Aylan678 hasten to a glorious goal,
the one who reaches it first is made chief.”

So I recited it to him as dawn broke. (‘Umar) said, “Recite ‘The Event’.679 So I recited it. Then he dismounted and said his prayers, reciting “The Event” [in them].

According to Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Muḥammad b. Iṣḥāq—
a source—‘Ikrimah680—Ibn ‘Abbās: As ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb
and some of his friends were reciting poetry together, one said
that so and so was the best poet. Another said that, rather, so and so was the best poet. (Ibn ‘Abbās) continued: I arrived and
‘Umar remarked, “The most knowledgeable on the subject has just arrived.” And he asked, “Who is the best poet, Ibn ‘Abbās?”
I replied it was Zuhayr b. Abī Sulmā. ‘Umar asked me to provide some of his poetry that would prove what I had said. I said, “He eulogized a group of Banū ‘Abdallāh b. Ghaṭafān as follows:681

677. The meter is fawīl. The poet is Zuhayr b. Abī Sulmā, one of the greatest of the pre-Islamic poets. See Thalāb, Sharḥ, 234; Iṣfahānī, Aghānī, IX, 146ff. The poem in question is quoted on 147.

678. A large tribal confederation of Adnān. The name Qays is synonymous with the northern tribes, Adnān. See Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 468ff., 48off.; Kaḥḥālah, Muḥam, III, 972–973, El2, s.v. [Watt].

679. Sūrat al-Wāqī‘ah, Qur’ān, LVI, the “Event” being the day of Judgment. This is perhaps a more specific reference to “those coming first” [al-sābiqūnā] in verse 10.


If there were sitting above the sun [in a position] of nobility
a people by means of their ancestry or their glory, [Banū 'Abdallāh b. Ghatafān] would be they.

[They are] a people whose ancestor is a spearhead; when you [2770]
examine their pedigree,
they have an excellent one, as do all their offspring.
[They are] men when they feel safe, jinn when they are afraid,
warriors ready to sacrifice themselves when they come
together,
Envied for what good things they have;
may God not remove from them the thing for which they are envied.”

“Bravo!” exclaimed 'Umar, “I do not know of anyone more
worthy of such poetry than this branch of Banū Hāshim682
because of the excellence of the Messenger of God and their
close relationship to him.” I said, “May you be granted lasting
success, Commander of the Faithful.” ['Umar] said, “Do you
know, Ibn 'Abbās, what kept your people from [being put] over
(Quraysh) after Muḥammad’s death?” I did not want to answer,
so I said, “If I do not know, then the Commander of the Faithful
will tell me.” 'Umar said, “They were unwilling for you to
combine the prophethood and the caliphate, lest you magnify
yourselves above your own people and be proud. Quraysh made
the choice for themselves, they were right and have been
granted success.” I said, “Commander of the Faithful, if you will
permit me and not get angry with me, I shall speak.” He allowed
me to do so, so I said, “As for your saying, Commander of the
Faithful, that Quraysh have made their choice for themselves
and that they were right and have been granted success, if
Quraysh had made the same choice for themselves as God did
for them, then right would be theirs, unrejected and unenvied.
As for your saying that [Quraysh] were averse to the prophet-
hood and the caliphate being ours, God has described one people
as being averse and said, ‘This is because they were averse
to what God revealed, so He made their works fruitless.’”683

682. That is, Banū al-‘Abbās.
'Umar said, "Far from it indeed, Ibn 'Abbas. I used to hear things about you of which I was reluctant to inquire, lest they bring about your removal from your position with me." I said, "What are they, Commander of the Faithful? If they are right, they should not [be such as to] remove me from my position with you; if they are false, then someone like me will remove the falsehood from himself."' Umar said, "I have heard that you are saying they have turned [the caliphate] away from you out of envy and injustice." I replied, "When you say out of injustice, Commander of the Faithful, it has already become clear to the ignorant and the thoughtful alike; when you say out of envy, Iblis was envious of Adam, and we are his offspring who are envied."' Umar said, "Far from it! Your hearts, Banu Hāshim, have refused [to show anything] other than unchanging envy and increasing spite and malice." I replied, "Take it easy, Commander of the Faithful, do not describe the hearts of a people from whom God has removed uncleanness, and whom He has purified completely, as being envious and malicious. The heart of the Messenger of God is one of the hearts of Banu Hāshim."' Umar retorted, "Leave me, Ibn 'Abbas." I said I would comply, but, when I went to get up, he became embarrassed at what he had said to me and said, "Stay where you are, Ibn 'Abbas. I shall tend to your right and approve of what gives you pleasure." I replied, "Commander of the Faithful, I have a right that is incumbent upon you and every Muslim. Anyone who preserves it will achieve good fortune; anyone who does not will lose good fortune." Then he got up and went away.

According to Aḥmad b. 'Umar—Ya'qūb b. Ishāq al-Ḥadramī—'Ikrimah b. 'Ammār—Iyās b. Salamah—his father: 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb passed through the market carrying

---

684. That is, that Quraysh are in any way attempting to thwart the legitimate rights of the 'Alid family.
685. Iblis, the Devil, was the angel in Islamic tradition who refused to prostrate himself before Adam. See Qur'an, VII: 11, 19ff., XX:115ff.
686. Cairo reads Abūd b. 'Amr. It is not possible to identify him with certainty.
his whip. He dealt me a blow with it and caught the edge of my garment, saying, "Get out of the way." The following year he met me and said, "Are you intending to go on the pilgrimage, Salamah?" When I told him that I was, he took me by the hand to his house and gave me 600 dirhams, saying, "Use them to make your pilgrimage, and you should know that they are by way of compensation for the lash that I gave you." I replied, "But I had not remembered it, Commander of the Faithful." "But I had not forgotten it!" he exclaimed.

According to 'Abd al-Ḥamīd b. Bayān—Muḥammad b. Yazīd—Ismāʿīl b. Abī Khalīd—Salamah b. Kuhayl: 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb said, "O subjects, you have an obligation to us to give advice on what is unknown and to cooperate in doing good. There is no forbearance (ḥilm) dearer to God and more generally advantageous than that of a gentle leader. O subjects, there is no ignorance more hateful to God and more generally evil than that of a harsh leader. O subjects, he who enjoins well-being for someone in his midst, God will bring him well-being from above."

According to Muḥammad b. Iṣhāq—Yaḥyā b. Maʿīn—Yaʿqūb b. Ibrāhīm—Īsā b. Yazīd b. Daʿb—'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abī Zayd—'Imrān b. Sawādah: I said the morning prayer with 'Umar, and he recited the Subḥān chapter and one other. Then he left. I went off with him, and he asked if there was anything he could do. I told him there was, so he asked me to join him. I did so and, when he entered [his house], he gave me permission [to enter]. There he was on a bed with nothing on it. I told him I wanted to give him some advice. His reply was, "The person giving good advice is welcome anytime." I said, "Your community finds fault with you on four counts." ('Umar) put the top of his whip in his beard and the lower part on his

---

690. He died in 244/858. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VI, 111.
691. It is not possible to identify this narrator with certainty.
693. He died in 133/848. See Rosenthal, Historiography, 341.
694. An unidentified narrator.
695. An unidentified narrator.
696. That is, Qurʾān XVII, usually entitled "The Children of Israel."
thigh. Then he said, "Tell me more." I continued, "It has been mentioned that you declared the lesser pilgrimage forbidden during the months of the [full] pilgrimage. The Messenger of God did not do this, nor Abū Bakr, though it is permitted." He answered, "It is permitted. If they were to perform the lesser pilgrimage during the months of the pilgrimage, they would regard it as being in lieu of the full pilgrimage, and [Mecca] would be a deserted place that year, and the pilgrimage would be celebrated by no one, although it is part of God's greatness. You are right." I continued, "It is also said that you have forbidden temporary marriage, although it was a license given by God. We enjoy a temporary marriage for a handful [of dates], and we can separate after three nights." He replied, "The Messenger of God permitted it at a time of necessity. Then people regained their life of comfort. I do not know any Muslim who has practiced this or gone back to it. Now anyone who wishes to can marry for a handful [of dates] and separate after three nights. You are right." I continued, "You emancipate a slave girl if she gives birth, without her master's consenting to the emancipation." He replied, "I added one thing that is forbidden to another, intending only to do some good. I ask God's forgiveness." I continued, "There have been complaints of your raising your voice against your subjects and your addressing them harshly." He raised his whip, then ran his hand down it right to the end. Then he said, "I am Muḥammad's traveling companion"—he had [in fact] sat behind him at the raid on Qarqarat al-Kudr. "Indeed I pasture [my flocks] well until

697. The pilgrimage that can be undertaken at any time of the year. See SEI, s.v. "umra" [Paret].

698. Temporary marriage, mut'ah, is recognized by the Twelver Shi'is only. See SEI, s.v. [Heffening], Schacht, Origins, 266–67; Introduction, 163; Coulson, History, 110–11, 115–16.

699. Where temporary marriage was permitted, it was carried out in return for a robe or a handful of dates. See SEI, loc. cit.

700. The umm walad would normally have to wait until her master died before gaining her freedom.

701. A plain in the area of Khaybar, about 6 miles away from the town. The raid does not appear to be dated precisely in the sirah and maghdži literature, but must have been only a short time before the death of the Prophet in 10/632. See Waqidi, Maghdži, I, 182ff. [Qarqarat al-Kudr], Ibn Hishām, Sirah, II, 618, al-Mandāšik, 411; Bilādī, Mu'jam, VII, 117.
they are satisfied. I water them and quench their thirst. I push back the she-camel that grumbles when milked. I chide the she-camel that does not stick to the road. I keep them moving. I do not drive them too fast. I gather together camels pasturing alone. I bring up camels lagging behind. I chide often and beat seldom. I raise my stick. I push away with my hand. Were it not for all this, I would be much at fault!” (The source) continued: Mu‘āwiyyah heard this and said, “He was indeed knowledgeable about their subjects.”

According to Ya‘qūb b. Ibrāhīm—Ibn ’Ulayyah—Ibn ’Awn—Muhammad: ‘Uthmān said, “‘Umar used to deny his family and relatives things, seeking God’s face, whereas I give freely to my family and relatives, [also] seeking it. No three like ‘Umar will ever be met with again.”

According to ‘Alī b. Sahl—Ḍamrah b. Rabī‘ah—Abdallāh b. Abī Sulaymān—his father: I arrived in Medina and entered one of the houses there. There was ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb wearing [only] a striped waist wrapper and smearing the alms camels with tar.

According to Ibn Bashshār—‘Abd al-Rahmān [b. Mahdi]—Suﬁyān [b. ‘Uyaynah]—Ḥabīb—Abū Wā’il [Shaqīq]: ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb said, “Had I known in the beginning what I know now, I would have taken the excess wealth of the rich and distributed it among the poor Emigrants.”


---

702. An unidentified narrator.
703. That is, only Abū Bakr and ‘Umar had such piety, but I, ‘Uthmān, cannot compete with them. See Tāntāwī, Akhbār, 542.
704. ‘Alī b. Sahl al-Ramlī does not figure in the major biographical dictionaries, but see Translation, I, 25, 174 n. 45.
705. Ḍamrah b. Rabī‘ah al-Ramlī has a brief entry in Ibn Ḥajar, Tāhdhib, IV, 460.
706. An unidentified narrator.
707. To treat mange, sores, and other skin problems.
b. Yazid: Whenever a delegation came to 'Umar, he would ask them about their leader. They would give a good account of him, so he would ask, "Does he visit your sick?" They would answer that he did, so he would ask, "Does he visit the sick slave?" They would answer that he did, so he would ask, "How does (your leader) treat the weak? Does he sit at his door?" If they replied in the negative regarding any one of these customs, he would dismiss him.

According to Ibn Ḥumayd—al-Ḥakam b. Bashīr—'Amr [b. Muḥammad]: 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb used to say,

There are four matters connected with Islam that I shall never neglect or abandon for anything: the strength in God's wealth and collecting it so that, when we do collect it, we place it where God orders us, and remain, family of 'Umar, with nothing of it in our hands at all. [Second, there are] the Emigrants who are beneath the shadow of swords—they should not be restricted, nor detained away from their families; God's immovable booty should be for them and for their families in abundance, and I shall look after their families until they return. [Third, there are] the Helpers who have already given their share to God and all of them fought the enemy—the good deeds of those who do good among them should be accepted as such, whereas the evil deeds of those who do evil deeds should be passed over without punishment and they should be consulted in the matter. [Fourth, there are] the bedouins who are the original Arabs and the mainstay of Islam—their alms should be taken from them in kind—not a single dinar should be taken from them, nor [even] a dirham—and it should be returned to their poor and wretched.

According to al-Sarī—Shu'ayb—Sayf—Ibn Jurayj—Nāfi'—'Abdallāh b. 'Umar: 'Umar said, "I know that all the people [together] are not equal to these two men between whom and Gabriel the Apostle of God was the confidential messenger,

---

712. An unidentified narrator.
receiving the revelations from him and dictating them to them."713

The Account of the Electoral Council714

According to 'Umar b. Shabah—'Ali b. Muhammad [al-Madawayini]—Waki' [b. al-Jarräh]—al-A‘mash—Ibrāhim, and Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh al-Ansārī715—Ibn Abī 'Arūbah716—Qatādah—Shahr b. Ḥawshab,717 and Abū Mikhnaf718—Yūsuf b. Yazīd719—Abū al-‘Abbās Sahīh720 and Mubārak b. Ḥaḍālah—'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar, and Yūnus b. Abī Ishāq721—'Amr b. Maymūn al-Awdi:722 When 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb was stabbed, it was suggested to him that he should appoint a successor. "Whom shall I appoint caliph?" was his reply. "If Abū 'Ubaydah b. al-Jarrāh were alive, I would appoint him, and if my Lord questioned me, I would say, 'I heard Your prophet say that (Abū 'Ubaydah) was the guardian of this community.' If Sālim, client
of Abū Ḥudhayfah,724 were alive, I would appoint him, and if my Lord questioned me, I would say, 'I heard your prophet say that Sālim loves God vehemently.'" Someone said to ('Umar), "I can point to someone, 'Abdallāh b. ‘Umar." But ('Umar) replied, "God curse you! You were not saying this for God's sake! You wretch! How can I appoint caliph someone who has been unable to divorce his wife! We have no desire [to get involved] in your affairs. I have not found [the caliphate] so praiseworthy that I should covet it for my own family. If things turn out well, we shall have gained our reward from them; but if they turn out badly, then it is enough for the family of 'Umar that [only] one of them should be called to account and held responsible for what happened to Muhammad's community. I have striven and have kept my own family out. If I succeed in coming out [of all this] even, and no recompense [being given to me], I shall indeed be happy. I shall look [into the matter]: if I do appoint a caliph, then someone better than I has made the appointment; but if I abandon [the idea], someone better than I has [already] done this. God will never neglect His faith."725

So (those with him) left and returned in the evening, suggesting to the Commander of the Faithful that he draw up a succession agreement. He replied, "I had decided after talking to you that I would look [into the matter] and appoint someone over you, the most suitable of you to bear you along the true path." And he indicated 'Ali. [He continued], "But I fell into a swoon and saw a man who had entered a garden that he had planted. He began to pick everything, both the young tender plants and the mature ones, clutching them to him and putting them beneath him. I knew that God was in control and was taking 'Umar into His mercy. I do not want to take on the burden [of the caliphate], dead as well as alive. You should [approach] that group of men who the Messenger of God said are 'among the people of paradise.' Sa'id b. Zayd b. ‘Amr b.

---

724. Sālim figures quite prominently in the early histories, but this is a strange assertion. See Ibn Hishām, Sīrah, I, 479, 679, 708, etc.; Wāqīdī, Maghāzī, I, 9, 148, 154, etc.

725. In the first instance, if he does appoint a caliph, Abū Bakr has already done this. In the second, if he does not, Muhammad himself did not appoint a caliph. Either way he has a precedent.
The Events of the Year 23

Nufayl726 is one of them. I am not bringing him into the matter, but rather the following six: 'Ali and 'Uthmān, sons of 'Abd Manāf,727 'Abd al-Raḥmān [b. 'Awf] and Sa'd [b. Abi Waqqās], maternal uncles of the Messenger of God, al-Zubayr b. al-'Awwām, the true friend and cousin of the Messenger of God, and Ṭalḥat al-Khayr b. 'Ubaydallāh.728 Let them select one of themselves. When they appoint a leader, [you all] should give him good help and support. If he entrusts anyone of you with authority, he should convey to him what is committed to his care."

They left and al-'Abbas729 said to 'Ali, "Do not get involved with them." He replied, "I do not like dissension [in our family]." [Al-'Abbās] said, "Then you will see something you do not like!" When morning came, 'Umar summoned 'Ali, 'Uthmān, Sa'd, 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Awf, and al-Zubayr b. al-'Awwām and said, "I have looked into the matter and consider you to be the chiefs and leaders of the people. This matter will remain among you alone. When the Messenger of God died, he was well pleased with you. I have no fears for you with the people if you remain on the straight path. However, I do fear for you if there is a difference of opinion among you and the people then differ among themselves. Off you go to 'Ā'ishah's room, with her permission, and deliberate. Choose one of you." Then he added, "Do not go to 'Ā'ishah's room; rather stay near at hand." He put down his head, exhausted by the loss of blood.

So they went in and held secret discussions. But then their voices became raised and 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar exclaimed loud enough for ['Umar] to hear, "God heavens, the Commander of

---

727. A reference to the fact that both belonged to Quraysh—as did the other four—and represented both its lines through 'Abd Manāf, where the pedigree split: 'Ali was descended from 'Abd Manāf through Hāshim, whereas 'Uthmān was descended from 'Abd Manāf through 'Abd Shams.
728. Al-Zubayr was the son of the Prophet's paternal aunt. I detect no great significance in his calling Ṭalḥah Ṭalḥat al-Khayr, which I take to be a way of expressing endearment.
729. Al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib, the uncle of both the Prophet and 'Ali. See EI, s.v. [Watt].
the Faithful is not yet dead!" ('Umar) came to and said, "All of you, stop this! When I am dead, hold your consultations for three days. Let Šuḥayb lead the people in prayer. Before the fourth day comes you should have your commander from among you. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar will be there as adviser, but he shall have nothing to do with the matter [of the actual appointment]. Ťalḥah shall share with you in the decision. If he comes within the three days, include him in your decision. If the three days go by and he does not come, make the decision nevertheless. Who will deal with Ťalḥah for me?" "I shall," responded Sa'd b. Abī Waqqās, "and he will not give a differing view, God willing." 'Umar said, "I hope he will not give a differing view, God willing. I think one of these two, 'Aṭī or 'Uthmān, will become leader. If it is 'Uthmān, he is a gentle person; if it is 'Aṭī, he has a sense of humor. How suitable he is to carry them along the true road! If you appoint Sa'd, he is worthy of the office, but if not, the one appointed should seek his assistance. I have never dismissed him for disloyalty or weakness. How perceptive 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf is! He is disposed to what is right. [He is] rightly guided and has a protector in God. Listen to what he has to say."

('Umar) said to Abū Ťalḥah al-Anṣārī, "For a long time had God strengthened Islam through you Helpers, Abū Ťalḥah. Select fifty Helpers and urge them to choose one of them." To al-Miqdād b. al-Aswad730 he said, "When you put me into my grave, assemble these people in one room to choose one of their number." To Šuḥayb he said, "Lead the people in prayer for three days. Let into [the deliberations] 'Aṭī, 'Uthmān, al-Zubayr, Sa'd, 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf, and Ťalḥah, if he arrives. Have 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar present, but he shall have nothing to do with the matter [of the actual appointment]. Stay with them and if five agree to approve of one man, but one refuses, smash in his head, or strike it off with a sword. If four agree to approve of one man, but two refuse, cut off the [latters'] heads. If three approve of one of them, and three approve of another, get 'Abdallāh b.

‘Umar to make a decision. Let whichever party in favor of which he makes his judgment select one of themselves. If they do not accept ‘Abdallâh b. ‘Umar’s judgment, be on the same side as ‘Abd al-Rahman b. ‘Awf. Kill the rest if they do not go along with the general consensus.’

So they left. ‘Ali said to some Banû Ḥâshim who were with him, “If your people are obeyed [only] among themselves, you will never be appointed to positions of leadership.” Al-‘Abbâs came to him, and (‘Ali) said, “(The caliphate) has slipped from us!”731 Al-‘Abbâs asked him how he knew. He continued, “(‘Umar) paired me with ‘Uthmân and told us [all] to fall in with the majority. If two approve of one, and two another, [he said], we should be on the same side as ‘Abd al-Raḥmân b. ‘Awf. Sa’d will not go against his cousin, ‘Abd al-Raḥmân, who is related by marriage to ‘Uthmân. They will all [three] agree in their opinion. ‘Abd al-Raḥmân will appoint ‘Uthmân to the caliphate, or ‘Uthmân will appoint ‘Abd al-Raḥmân. If the other two were with me, they would be of no benefit to me, to say nothing of the fact that I have hope only of one of them.” Al-‘Abbâs said to him, “I have never urged you to do anything without your later responding to me by holding back in a way I do not like. When the Messenger of God died, I ordered you to ask him [on his death bed] who should have the rule, but you refused. After (Muhammad’s) death I ordered you to bring the matter to a speedy conclusion, but you refused. When ‘Umar nominated you a member of the electoral council, I advised you to have nothing to do with them, but you refused. Just learn one thing from me: whenever people make you a proposal, say no, unless they are appointing you [caliph]. Watch out for these people, they will continue to push us out of the matter [of the caliphate] until someone else takes our [rightful] place. I swear in God’s name, no such person will get [the caliphate] without the help of some evil together with which no good will be of benefit!” ‘Ali replied, “If ‘Uthmân survives, I shall certainly remind him of what has happened. If he dies, they will certainly take [the caliphate] by turns among themselves. If they do, they

731. That is, Banû Ḥâshim.
will certainly find me in a position they do not like." Then he quoted the following verses, applying them to his own situation:732

I swore by the lord of the mares prancing one evening—
[but] in the morning they came, nimble, hastening to al-
Muḥāṣṣab.733

"The family of Ibn Ya‘mar will certainly stand apart, facing a bloody place, difficult to drink from, they being the sons of al-Shuddākh.734

And he turned and saw Abū Ṭalḥah, but did not like his being there. Abū Ṭalḥah said, "Nothing to be afraid of, Abū al-
Ḥasan!"735

When ‘Umar died and his bier was brought out, both ‘Alī and ‘Uthmān pretended not to mind which of them would pray over him. But ‘Abd al-Raḥman said, "Both of you are candidates for the caliphate. This matter has nothing to do with you. It is for Ṣuhayb whom ‘Umar appointed to lead the people in prayer for three (nights) until they can agree on a leader." So Ṣuhayb prayed over (‘Umar). When he had been buried, al-Miqdād assembled the members of the electoral council in the house of al-Miswar b. Makhramah—another version is that it was in the treasury and yet another that it was in ‘Āishah’s room with her permission—five in all, accompanied by Ibn ‘Umar and with Ṭalḥah [still] absent. They ordered Abū Ṭalḥah to prevent anyone from disturbing them. ‘Amr b. al-‘Āṣ and al-Mughirah b. Shu‘bah arrived and sat at the door, but Sa‘d threw pebbles at

733. A place between Mecca and Minā, nearer to the latter. See al-Manāṣik, 602; Bilādi, Mu’jam, VIII, 43–44.
734. Ya‘mar b. ‘Awf, nicknamed al-Shuddākh, was during the pre-Islamic period one of the arbitrators of Kinānah who gave a judgment between the tribes of Khuzā‘ah and Quṣayy on the question of the Ka‘bah. See Ibn Manṣūr, Lisān, III, 28; Zabīdī, Tāj, VII, 278–79. The second line is the very tentative rendering of la-yakhtaliyan rahu bni Ya‘mara marī`an najī` an banū l-Shuddākhī wirdan musallabā.

‘Alī here emphasises his isolation in the face of opposition.

735. Abū al-Ḥasan is ‘Alī. This seems to indicate Abū Ṭalḥah’s support for the Alid family.
them and made them get up, saying, "You want to say, 'We were there; we were members of the electoral council.'" The electoral council argued about the affair and a great deal of talking went on among them. Abū Ṭalḥah said, "I was more afraid that you would reject (the caliphate) than I was that you would compete for it. No, by Him who has taken away 'Umar's soul, I shall give you no more than the three days that you were ordered. Then I shall sit down in my own house and see what you are up to!"

'Abd al-Raḥmān said, "Which one of you will withdraw from the [race for the caliphate], and undertake to appoint the best of you?" No one answered. So he continued, "I withdraw." 'Uthmān said, "I am the first to accept [this]. I heard the Messenger of God say, '{Abd al-Raḥmān] is trustworthy on earth and will be in heaven." All the members, with the exception of 'Ali who remained silent, expressed their approval. So '{Abd al-Raḥmān] said, "What do you say, Abū al-Ḥasan?" '{Ali] replied, "Give me your word you will consider truth paramount, you will not follow your whim, you will not show any preference for a relative, and you will not let the community down." '{Abd al-Raḥmān] said [to the others], "Give me your solemn promises you will stand with me against anyone who reneges [on your final decision] and you will approve of anyone I choose for you. I impose a pact with God upon myself that I shall show no preference for a relative, because he is a relative, nor shall I let down the Muslims." He took a promise from them and similarly gave them his word. '{Abd al-Raḥmān] said to 'Ali, "You say you have most right of those present to the office because of your close relationship [to the Prophet] and your long standing in and the good deeds you have done in the cause of Islam, and you have not, [in saying so], said anything remote [from the truth]. But if you were not involved in the matter and were not here at all, whom would you think of them all has most right to [the office]?" He replied, "'Uthmān." '{Abd al-Raḥmān] took 'Uthmān on one side and said, "You say you are a shaykh of Banū 'Abd Manaf and related to the Messenger of God by marriage and his cousin, an excellent man of long standing [in Islam]—and you have not said anything remote from the truth and that (the caliphate) cannot therefore be taken from you. But if you were not here, which of the members do
you think has most right to [the office]?” He replied, “‘Ali.”

Then (‘Abd al-Rahmân) took al-Zubayr on one side and addressed him in the same way as he had ‘Ali and ‘Uthmân. He replied, “‘Uthmân.” Then (‘Abd al-Rahmân) took Sa’d on one side and spoke to him. He answered “‘Uthmân.” ‘Ali met Sa’d and quoted, “‘Fear God by whom you make demands one of another, and the wombs [which bore you]. God is ever watching you.” I am asking you, in the name of the relationship [raḥim] of this son of mine with the Messenger of God and that of my paternal uncle, Ḥamzah, with you, not to stand with ‘Abd al-Rahmân, assisting ‘Uthmân against me. I have connections ‘Uthman does not.” ‘Abd al-Rahmân went round at night meeting the Companions of the Messenger of God and those army commanders and nobles who arrived in Medina and consulting with them. Everyone he took to one side gave him instructions to opt for ‘Uthmân. Then on the eve of the morning of the deadline, he came to the house of al-Miswar b. Makhramah well into the night and woke him up, saying, “You’re asleep, when I have had very little tonight? Off you go and summon al-Zubayr and Sa’d!”

So (al-Miswar) summoned them and (‘Abd al-Rahmân) began with al-Zubayr at the back of the mosque under the covering (ṣuffah) that adjoins the house of Marwân, saying, “Let the rule go to the sons of ‘Abd Manaf!” (Al-Zubayr) said, “I throw in my lot with ‘Ali.” (‘Abd al-Rahmân) said to Sa’d, “We are cousins. Throw in your lot with me so that I can choose.” He replied, “If you choose yourself, that is fine! But if you choose ‘Uthmân, then I prefer to support ‘Ali. Have yourself accepted [as caliph], give us some respite and raise up our heads.” (‘Abd al-Rahmân) said, “Abū Ishāq, I have withdrawn from [the ca-

737. The text has a singular, “son,” presumably al-Ḥasan, who was born from the womb of Fātimah, the Prophet’s daughter. The parallel text of the ‘IQd [IV, 278], however, has a dual, “these two sons of mine”; viz., al-Ḥasan and al-Ḥusayn.
738. Ḥamzah b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib, the brother of ‘Ali’s father, Abū Ṭalib.
739. This is perhaps the young Marwân b. al-Ḥakam, the future fourth ‘Umayyad caliph, who died in 65/685.
740. That is, ‘Ali and ‘Uthmân. See note 727, above.
liphate) on condition that I make the choice. [Even] had I not done so and the choice had come back on me, I would not have wanted [the caliphate]. I saw myself in a dream as if in a green meadow rich in fresh herbage. A stallion camel came in—I have never seen such a noble stallion—and passed through like an arrow without paying attention to anything in the meadow right to the other side without stopping. A stallion followed him in immediately after and left the meadow. Then a fine thoroughbred stallion entered, dragging his halter, turning right and left, going where the other two went and leaving. Then a fourth, a stallion camel entered and pastured in the meadow. No indeed, I shall not be the fourth. No one can take the place of Abū Bakr and 'Umar after their death and [then] be approved of by the people.” Sa'd replied, “I am afraid that weakness has overcome you. Do as you think best. You know what 'Umar’s death bed instructions were.”

Al-Zubayr and Sa'd left. ['Abd al-Rahmān) sent al-Miswar b. Makhramah for ‘Ali and talked with him in private for a long time, [the latter] not doubting that he was to be selected for the office [of caliph]. Then ['Ali] left, and ['Abd al-Rahmān] sent al-Miswar for 'Uthmān, but the call to morning prayer interrupted their private conversation.

According to 'Amr b. Maymūn: 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar told me, "'Amr, anyone who tells you that he knows what 'Abd al-Rahmān discussed with 'Ali and 'Uthmān, does not know what he is talking about! Your Lord’s decision fell on 'Uthmān.”

When they had said the morning prayers, ['Abd al-Rahmān) convened the members [of the electoral council] and sent for all the Emigrants and the Helpers of long standing [in Islam] and of excellence and the military commanders who were [in Medina]. They all assembled and there was confusion among the people in the mosque. ['Abd al-Rahmān] said, “People, everyone wants those of the garrison towns to return to them, having learned

741. The text reads “Inni uritu ka-raydatin khadrā'a” etc. Much neater is Ibn 'Abd Rabbih, 'Iqd, IV, 278, who has Inni ra'aytu ka-anni fi rawdatin khadrā'a. I have translated the latter. In the anecdote that follows the first noble stallion camel represents the Prophet, the stallion camel Abū Bakr, and the fine thoroughbred 'Umar. The fourth represents 'Umar’s successor.
who their supreme commander is." Sa'id b. Zayd said, "We think you are worthy of [the caliphate]." He replied, "Give me some different advice!" 'Ammār [b. Yāsir] said, "If you want the Muslims to be in full agreement, give 'Alī the oath of allegiance." Al-Miqdād b. al-Aswad said, "'Ammār is right; if you give 'Alī the oath of allegiance, we shall say that we are in full agreement with what you are doing." Ibn Abī Sarḥ⁷⁴² said, "If you want Quraysh to be in full agreement, give 'Uthmān the oath of allegiance." 'Abdallāh b. Abī Rabi'ah said, "He is right; if you give 'Uthmān the oath of allegiance, we shall say that we are in full agreement with what you are doing." 'Ammār upbraided Ibn Abī Sarḥ, saying, "When did you ever give the Muslims any good advice?!

Banū Hāshim and Banū Umayyah⁷⁴³ held talks. 'Ammār said, "O people, God has ennobled us through His Prophet and strengthened us through His religion. How can you take this appointment away from those of the house of your Prophet?" A member of Banū Makhzūm⁷⁴⁴ said, "You have gone too far, Ibn Sumayyah! Why should you have anything to do with Quraysh taking the leadership for themselves?"⁷⁴⁵ Sa'd b. Abī Waqqāṣ said, "Get it over with, 'Abd al-Rahmān, before our people fall into civil war." 'Abd al-Rahmān said, "I have looked into [the matter] and consulted. Do not, members of the electoral council, lay yourselves open to criticism." He summoned 'Alī and said, "God's agreement and covenant is binding on you. Will you indeed act in accordance with God's Book, the practice of His Messenger and the example of the two caliphs after him?" ['Alī] replied, "I hope to do this and act thus to the best of my knowledge and ability." ['Abd al-Rahmān] summoned 'Uthmān and said to him the same as what he had said to 'Alī. ['Uthmān] replied, "Yes." So ['Abd al-Rahmān] gave him the oath of

---

⁷⁴². Ibn Abī Sarḥ was 'Iyād b. 'Abdallāh b. Sa'd who died ca. 100/718. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VIII, 200–1.
⁷⁴³. That is, the families of 'Alī and 'Uthmān, respectively.
⁷⁴⁵. Sumayyah was a concubine, and this is therefore an insult. 'Ammār was not of Quraysh. See note 8, above. See also EI², s.v. "'Ammār" (Reckendorf).
The Events of the Year 23

allegiance. 'Ali said, “You have always been partial in his favor!" This is not the first time you have banded together against us. But 'my course is comely patience and God's help is to be asked against what you describe.’ You have appointed 'Uthmān only so that the rule will come back to you. 'Every day God exercises power.’" 'Abd al-Rahmān retorted, “Do not lay yourself open to criticism, 'Ali. I have looked into the matter and consulted the people. They regard no one as the equal of 'Uthmān.” 'Ali left, saying, “[God’s] decree will come in its time!” Al-Miqdād said, “You have indeed, 'Abd al-Rahmān, passed up the one who makes decisions based 'on the truth and thereby acts justly.’" [Abd al-Rahmān] replied, “I have indeed exerted all my efforts for the Muslims, Miqdād.” [The former] said, “If you sincerely did what you did for God’s sake, may He reward you as He does those who do good.” [But] al-Miqdād said, “I have never seen such things as have been visited upon the people of this house after the death of their Prophet. I am amazed at Quraysh that they have abandoned someone who cannot be matched in my opinion in knowledge and the ability to act justly. What indeed if I were to find supporters against 'Uthmān!” 'Abd al-Rahmān replied, “Fear God, Miqdād, I am afraid you will cause dissension.” Someone questioned al-Miqdād, “God have mercy upon you, who are the people of this house and who is this man?” He replied, “The people of the house are Banū al-Muṭṭalib and the man is 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib.” 'Ali said, “The people are looking to Quraysh, while Quraysh are [also] looking to their own house. [Quraysh] say that, if Banū Ḥāshim are put in authority over you, [the caliphate] will never leave them, but so long as it is in the hands of [clans] other than [Banū Ḥāshim] of Quraysh, you will pass it around among yourselves.”

Ṭalḥah arrived on the day on which the oath of allegiance

746. This appears to be what is meant by the Arabic ḥabawta-hu ḥabwa dahrin, see Glossarium, ccxliv. Ibn 'Abd Rabbih, 'Iqd, IV, 279, has ḥabawta-hu muḥābātan.
748. Qurʾān, LV:29.
749. See Qurʾān, VII:159, 181.
was given to 'Uthmān. He was asked to give his own oath to
'Uthmān, but asked, "Do all Quraysh approve of him?" and was
told they did. He came to 'Uthman and the latter said, "You
still have your options open; if you refuse [to give me the oath of
allegiance], I shall reject [the caliphate]." Ṭalḥah said, "Will you
really reject it?" 'Uthmān replied that he would. Ṭalḥah asked,
"Have all the people given you the oath of allegiance?" 'Uthmān
replied that they had. [Ṭalḥah] said, "Then I approve; I shall not
go against the general consensus." He gave ('Uthmān) the oath of
allegiance.

Al-Mughirah b. Shu'bah said to 'Abd al-Rahmān, "You were
right to give 'Uthman the oath of allegiance, Abu Muhammad." He
also said to 'Uthmān, "If 'Abd al-Rahmān had given the
oath of allegiance to anyone other than you, we would not have
agreed." But 'Abd al-Rahmān retorted, "You one-eyed liar! If I
had given anyone else the oath of allegiance, you would have
done so also and would have said what you say now."

Al-Farazdaq said: 750

Şuhayb led the prayer for three nights; then ('Abd al-Rahmān)
handed over [the caliphate]
to Ibn 'Affān, unlimited authority,
A caliphate [which passed on] from Abū Bakr to his colleague,
[Abū Bakr] rightly guided and ['Umar] under his command—
they were [all] sincere friends."

[2788] Al-Miswar b. Makhramah used to say, "I have never seen a man
got the better of a group of people in the matter in which they
were engaged more effectively than 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf did
of [the electoral council] in this case."

Abū Ja'far [al-Tabari] said: We [also] have the account of al-
Mısuar b. Makhramah. According to Salm b. Junādah Abū al-
Sālib—Sulaymān b. 'Abd al-'Azīz b. Abī Thābit b. 'Abd al-

750. The meter is basīṭ. Al-Farazdaq is the famous poet, Hammām b. Ghālib
b. Sa’ṣa’ah, always associated with al-Akhṭal and Jarir. Al-Farazdaq died ca.
111/729. Cf. El2, s.v. (Blachère), for a more recent assessment of al-Farazdaq and
his work, see Jayyusi, "Umayyad Poetry," 40ff. The poet here is eulogizing the
al-Farazdaq, Diwān, 1, 265.
The Events of the Year 23

'Azīz b. 'Umar b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Awf—his father—'Abd-Allāh b. Ja'far—his father—al-Miswar b. Makhramah, whose mother was 'Ātikah bt. 'Awf, in the account the first part of which I have already given concerning the murder of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb: The five, the members of the electoral council, went down into the grave of 'Umar, then left for their homes. But 'Abd al-Rahmān called them back, so they followed him, and he eventually came to the house of Fātimah bt. Qays al-Fihriyyah, sister of al-Ḍahhāk b. Qays al-Fihri. Some scholars say she was [not his sister but] his wife, a fine woman, one of perception. 'Abd al-Rahmān began by saying, “I have perception, you have insight. Listen and you will learn; respond and you will have knowledge. An arrow that, though lacking power, hits the target is better than one, shot too hard, that goes beyond it. A mouthful of cold, brackish water is more beneficial than sweet that brings infection [after drinking]. You are leaders through whom guidance is brought about; [you are] scholars to whom reference is made. Do not blunt your knives by differing among yourselves, nor put your swords in their scabbards away from your enemies and so make them attain their blood revenge and diminish your deeds. Every term has a prescribed end. Every house has a leader at whose command they rise up and at whose forbidding they desist. Put one of you in charge of your affair, and you will walk slowly [forward] and reach your aim. Were it not for blind dissension and complete error, the perpetrators of which say what they think and upon whom calamity alights, your intentions would not go beyond your knowledge or your deeds beyond your intentions. Beware of the advice given at a whim and the tongue that divides. A stratagem introduced into speech is more effective than swords in a wound. Associate your affairs with someone who has ample strength against whatever befalls, is trustworthy with things unknown whatever descends, is pleased with you and all of you are pleased with him, chosen from among you and

751. See page 93.

752. Al-Ḍahhāk b. Qays al-Fihri belonged to the Qurashi clan of Fihr. He was later in charge of Damascus, leader of Qays, the northern tribes, and fought against the Umayyad caliph, Marwān b. al-Ḥakam in 64/684 at the famous battle of Marj Rāḥīṭ, where he was defeated and killed. See Ṭabarī, II, 474ff.; Ḩīfahānī, Aghānī, XVII, 111; EI², s.v. (Dietrich).
[about whom] all of you have the same opinion. Do not obey an evil doer who gives good advice or go against someone rightly guided who gives his assistance. I am making this speech and I ask God for forgiveness for you and for myself.”

‘Uthmān b. ‘Affān spoke next, saying, “Praise be to God who took Muhammad as a prophet and sent him as a messenger. He told him truthfully of His promise and granted him His help against all those distantly or closely related. God has made us his followers, guided by His command. He is our light. We act at His command when personal opinions diverge and our enemies dispute [with us]. Through His bounty God has made us leaders and through our obedience to Him commanders. Our concern does not extend beyond ourselves; no one else will approach us except those who are oblivious to the truth and shrink from the established aim. How preferable it would be if [dissension] were left alone, Ibn ‘Awf! How apt that it should be,753 if your decision is opposed and your call abandoned. I am the first to agree with you and to call to you, answerable and responsible for what I say. I ask God for forgiveness for you and for myself.”

Al-Zubayr b. al-‘Awwām spoke after him, saying, “To continue. He who calls upon God is not ignorant and he who answers Him is not rejected when personal opinions diverge and necks turn. Only one deviating from the truth will not comply with what you say. Only a wretch will abandon that for which you call. Were it not for God’s ordinances that were made obligatory and God’s regulations that were ordained and are restored to those who keep them and remain alive and do not die, death would be an escape from command and flight would be security from authority. But we must answer God’s call and make the established practice prevail, lest we die a death of error and lest we suffer from the blindness of a time of ignorance. I agree with you in that to which you summon [us] and will support you in what you have commanded. There is no power and no strength except in God. I ask God for forgiveness for you and for myself.”

Sa’d b. Abi Waqqās then spoke, saying, “Praise be to God who

753. Reading wa-ajdir. Cairo reads wa-ahdhir, “how wary we should be of its occurring.”
was first and will be last. I praise Him because He has saved me from going astray and opened my eyes to error. Through God's guidance those who are saved are the winners; through His mercy those who are pure are successful. Through Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh roads are lit up, paths are straight, and all truth prevails, as all falsehood is no more. Beware, members of the electoral council, of lies and the desire of those who are false. Their desires have already dispossessed a people before you. They inherited what you did and they acquired what you did, so God made them enemies and heaped curses upon them. God said, 'Those of the Israelites who did not believe are cursed by David's tongue and that of Jesus, the son of Mary; this is because they disobeyed and transgressed. They did not restrain one another from evil that they committed. How wretched was what they did! I have scattered [the arrows in] my quiver and taken my winning arrow. For Ṭalḥah b. 'Ubaydallāh I have adopted [the opinion] of which I approved for myself. I am answerable for him and responsible for what [opinion] I gave on his behalf. The matter is in your hands, Ibn 'Awf, for you to put your effort into it and the good advice you intended. Upon God depends the ultimate destination and to Him shall be the return. I ask for forgiveness for you and for myself and take refuge in God from your opposition.'

'Ali b. Abī Ṭalib then spoke, saying, "Praise be to God who sent forth Muḥammad as Prophet from among us and as a messenger to us. We are the house of the prophethood, the mine of wisdom, the security of the people of the world, and a salvation for those who ask for it. We have a right; if we are given it, we take it; if we are refused it, we ride the rumps of our camels, though the night journey be long. If the Messenger of God had given us a commission, we would have carried out his agreement; if he had said [something] to us [as a designation], we would have disputed [with others] over it until we die. No
one will be faster than I to call for truth and claim close kinship. There is no power and strength except in God. Listen to and remember what I have to say. Perhaps you will see swords drawn and agreements broken in this matter after this council, until you become one united group, and some of you become leaders over those in error and over partisans (shī`ah) of the ignorant." Then he recited the following:758

If Jāsim has perished, I, because of what Banū 'Abd b. Dakhm have done,759 Shall [nevertheless] obey anyone [even if he is] unable to find the right way in the desert heat, knowing well my destination, [guided by] every star.760

'Abd al-Rahmān said, "Which one of you is willing to withdraw from this appointment and appoint someone else?" But they did not respond to his suggestion. He continued, "I withdraw myself and my cousin."761 So the members gave him the task of settling the matter. At the minbar he got them to swear to give the oath of allegiance to whomsoever he gave it, even if he were to give with one hand the oath of allegiance to the other. He remained for three [nights] in his house, which was near the mosque and called today Raḥbat al-Qaḍā' [Courtyard where the Decision was made]—for this reason it was given this name. Šūhāyb remained also for three [nights] leading the people in prayer.

'Abd al-Rahmān sent for 'Ali and said to him, "If I do not give you the oath of allegiance, tell me to whom I should." ('Ali) replied, "'Uthmān." Then ('Abd al-Rahmān) sent for 'Uthmān and asked the same thing of him. ('Uthmān) replied, "'Ali." ('Abd al-Rahmān) then dismissed them both and summoned al-

---

758. The meter is wāfīr. See Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, III, 37.
759. Jāsim is a section of the Amalekite tribe, Banū 'Abd b. Dakhm, from the area of al-Ṭā‘īl. See Ibn Manṣūr, Lisān, XII, 354; Firuzābādī, Qāmūs, IV, 143; Kahhālah, Mu‘jam, I, 157, II, 725. Ṭabarī, I, 230, however, places Jāsim in Oman.
760. 'Ali's message through this obscure poem is that, despite having been let down badly by his own people and despite having no one on which to depend, he can nevertheless proceed as he thinks fit, because he knows his goal is a righteous and attainable one.
761. That is, Sa‘d b. Abi Waqqāṣ.
Zubayr. He asked (al-Zubayr) the same thing and he replied "'Uthmân." Then ('Abd al-Raḥmân) summoned Sa'd and said, "Whom do you advise me [to support], as we two are not candidates for [the caliphate]?". He replied, "'Uthman." On the third night, ('Abd al-Raḥmân) called, "Miswar!" I replied, "At your service!" ('Abd al-Raḥmân) exclaimed, "You are asleep, when I have not slept for three [nights]! Go and call 'Ali and 'Uthmân for me. Miswar continued his account: I said, "Which shall I call first, uncle?" He replied, "Whichever one you wish." So I left and came to 'Ali—and he was the one I favored [for the caliphate]—and said, "Will you come to speak with my uncle?" ('Ali) said, "Did he send you to anyone else?" I replied that he had also sent me to 'Uthmân. ('Ali) said, "Which one of us did he order you to come to first?" I replied, "I asked him and he told me whichever one I wished. So I came to you first—you were the one I favored." So he came with me and we reached the place where people sit (al-maqa'id), and 'Ali took his seat there. I went in to see 'Uthmân and found him performing the witr prayer as dawn came up. Then I asked him if he would come to speak with my uncle. ('Uthmân) in turn asked me, "Did he send you to anyone else?" I replied that he had also sent me to 'Ali. ('Uthmân) said, "Which one of us did he order you to come to first?" I replied, "I asked him and he told me whichever one I wished. 'Ali is where the people sit." So he came with me and we all went in to see my uncle who was standing in the qiblah, praying. He left [his prayers] when he saw us, then he turned to 'Ali and 'Uthmân and said, "I have asked about you and about others. I find that the people regard no one as equal to you two. Will you, 'Ali, give me your oath of office based on God's Book, the practice of His Prophet, and the deeds of Abû Bakr and 'Umar?" ('Ali) replied, "Indeed no, but [only] based on my own effort in all this and in accordance with my own ability." ('Abd al-Raḥmân) turned to 'Uthmân and said, "Will you give me your oath of office based on God's Book, the practice of His Prophet, and the deeds of Abû Bakr and 'Umar?" ('Uthmân) said, "Indeed yes." Then ('Abd al-Raḥmân) made a sign with his

762. The odd number of prostrations performed in prayer at night. See SEI, s.v. (Wensinck).
hand to his shoulders\textsuperscript{763} and said, "If you will come this way!" §. we got up and went to the mosque where someone gave out the cry, "Everyone in for prayer!"\textsuperscript{764} 'Uthmān [later] said, "I held back, embarrassed by his haste to join 'Ali. I was at the back of the mosque." 'Abd al-Raḥmān appeared wearing the very turban that the Messenger of God had put on him and carrying his sword. He went up into the minbar where he stood for a long time. Then he said a prayer that the people did not hear.

\textquote[Abd al-Raḥmān]{('Abd al-Raḥmān) then spoke, "O people, I have questioned you in secret and openly on the question of [who will be] your leader. I have found that none of you regard [anyone else] as equal to one of these two, ‘Ali or ‘Uthmān. Come forward to me, ‘Ali." He did so and stood beneath the minbar. ‘Abd al-Raḥmān took his hand and said, "Will you give me your oath of office based on God's Book, the practice of His Prophet, and the deeds of Abū Bakr and 'Umar?" He replied, "No, but based on my own effort in all this and in accordance with my own ability."} ('Abd al-Raḥmān) let go of [‘Ali's] hand and called out, "Come forward to me, 'Uthmān." He took him by his hand, as ['Uthmān] stood where ‘Ali had stood, and said, "Will you give me your oath of office based on God's Book, the practice of His Prophet, and the deeds of Abū Bakr and 'Umar?" (‘Uthmān) replied, "Indeed yes!" So ['Abd al-Raḥmān] stretched right up to the ceiling of the mosque, his hand still in ‘Uthmān's hand. Then he said, "O God, hear and bear witness! O God, I have placed what was my own responsibility in all this upon 'Uthmān." The people crowded round to give 'Uthmān the oath of allegiance, until they reached him at the minbar. 'Abd al-Raḥmān sat down where the Prophet sat in the minbar, and he sat 'Uthmān down on the second step. The people began to give him the oath of allegiance, but ‘Ali excused himself. 'Abd al-Raḥmān quoted, "He who breaks his word, does so to his own detriment; he who keeps the agreement he has made with God, He will bring him a great reward."\textsuperscript{765} Then ‘Ali came back,

\textsuperscript{763} Thus signifying that they should walk on either side of him.
\textsuperscript{765} Qur‘ān, XLVIII:10.
pushing his way through the people, and gave the oath of allegiance, saying, "Deceit! What deceit!"

Abd al-'Azīz\(^{766}\) said, "The reason for 'Ali's mentioning deceit was simply that 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ had met 'Ali during the period the electoral council was meeting and said, 'Abd al-Raḥmān is striving hard. The more you show (your) firm resolution, the less keen he is (that you be appointed). But [the more you say you will act according to] (your) effort and ability, the keener he is (that you be appointed). Then ['Amr b. al-'Āṣ met 'Uthmān and said, 'Abd al-Raḥmān is striving hard. He will indeed give you his oath of allegiance only because of firm resolution. So accept [the offer].' It was for this reason that 'Ali mentioned deceit.'\(^{767}\)

Then ['Abd al-Raḥmān] went off with 'Uthmān to the house of Fāṭimah bt. Qays, where he sat down with the people. Al-Mughirah b. Shu‘bāh got up to make a speech, with 'Ali sitting there, "Praise be to God, Abu Muhammad, who has granted you success! There was indeed no one other than 'Uthmān for [the caliphate]." 'Abd al-Raḥmān said, "This is none of your business, Ibn al-Dabbāgh! I could give my own oath of allegiance to no one without your saying what you have just said about him!"

Then 'Uthmān sat at the side of the mosque and called for 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar, who was confined in the house of Sa'd b. Abī Waqqāṣ. He is the one from whose hand the sword had been snatched after he had killed Jufaynāh,\(^{768}\) al-Hurμuzān, and the daughter of Abū Lu’lu’ah, saying that he was going to kill some of those who were involved in shedding his father's blood, alluding to both the Emigrants and the Helpers. Sa'd had jumped up against him, snatched the sword from his hand and tugged at his hair until he had him on the ground. He held him prisoner in his own house until 'Uthmān brought him out. 'Uthmān said to a group of Emigrants and Helpers, "Give me your advice on [what to do with] this man who has brought

\(^{766}\) The father of Sulaymān, see the chain of authorities, p. 154, above.

\(^{767}\) 'Amr later appeared as Mu‘awiyah's arbitrator against Abū Mūsā al-Ash‘ari, 'Ali's arbitrator, after Šīfīn in 38/659. It appears from this text that he had long been against 'Ali.

\(^{768}\) Jufaynāh was a Christian slave from al-Ḥirāh, see p. 163, below.
schism into Islam.” ‘Ali replied, “I think you should kill him.” One of the Emigrants said, “‘Umar was killed yesterday; will his son be killed today?” But ‘Amr b. al-‘Āṣ said, “Commander of the Faithful, God has exempted you from this having happened while you were in authority over the Muslims; rather this took place when you had none.” ‘Uthmān said, “I am now their master. I have decided that blood money should be paid in this case, and I shall bear the cost from my own money.”

A Helper called Ziyād b. Labid al-Bayāḍī recited the following when he saw ‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Umar:769

Ah, you have no way of escape, ‘Ubaydallāh,

no place of refuge from Ibn Arwā770 and no means of protecting yourself.

You spilled blood indeed, completely unlawfully—

and killing al-Hurmuzān is a dangerous matter—

For no other reason than that someone said,

“Do you suspect al-Hurmuzān of [killing] ‘Umar?”

When so many things were happening, a fool replied,

“Yes, do suspect him, since he suggested [it] and gave the command.

The slave’s weapon771 was inside the (Hurmuzān’s) house,

he turning it over [in his hand]. One thing [must] be reckoned in relation to another.”

‘Ubaydallāh. b. ‘Umar complained to ‘Uthmān of Ziyād b. Labid and his poem, so ‘Uthmān called in Ziyād b. Labid and forbade him [from reciting it]. Ziyād recited the following, speaking of ‘Uthmān:772

Abū ‘Amr, ‘Ubaydallāh is a hostage—

have no doubt—for the killing of al-Hurmuzān.

For if you forgive him the offense, [this will be wrong],

769. The meter is ṭawīl. Ziyād b. Labid al-Bayāḍī is unidentified. For the poem, see Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, III, 37.
770. That is, ‘Uthmān b. ‘Affān, whose mother was Arwā bt. Kurayz.
771. That is, the double-bladed dagger used by Abū Lu’lu’ah to kill ‘Umar.
772. The meter is wāfīr. See Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, III, 37.
when the circumstances of the crime are [at least] equally balanced.\textsuperscript{773}

Will you forgive ['Ubaydallāh], when you have no right to do so?\textsuperscript{774}

[As yet] you have no authority to do what you say.\textsuperscript{775}

So 'Uthman summoned Ziyād b. Labīd, forbade him [to recite this], and sent him away.

According to al-Sarī—Shu‘ayb—Sayf—Yaḥyā b. Sa‘īd\textsuperscript{776}—Sa‘īd b. al-Musayyab: On the morning when 'Umar was stabbed 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abī Bakr said, “Last evening I passed by Abū Lu‘lu’ah, as he was meeting in secret with Jufaynah and al-Hurmuzān. When I came upon them, they sprang up and a dagger with two baldes and its handle in the middle fell out into their midst. Consider [the instrument] with which ('Umar) was killed!” [Abū Lu‘lu’ah] had already slipped through the crowd attending the mosque. A Tamīmī\textsuperscript{777} went off in search of him and returned to them, having kept after Abū Lu‘lu’ah as he left 'Umar, taken him, and killed him. [The Tamīmī] brought the dagger that 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abī Bakr had described. 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar heard about this, but held back until 'Umar died. Then he wrapped his garments round his sword, came to al-Hurmuzān, and killed him. When the sword was wounding him, he called out, “There is no god but God.” Then ['Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar] passed on to Jufaynah, a Christian from al-Ḥirah, foster son of Sa‘d b. Mālik\textsuperscript{778} and whom he had brought to Medina as a result of the peace between himself and [the inhabitants] and to teach him writing. As he held the sword over him, ['Ubaydallāh] [struck Jufaynah with it], making the

\textsuperscript{773} The second hemistich reads “wa-āshābū al-khāṭā farasā riḥānī”, literally, “two horses racing [neck and neck]”. That is, it is a question of timing: was 'Uthman in authority when the crime was perpetrated or not?

\textsuperscript{774} The first hemistich reads a-ta’fū ʾidh ʾafawta bi-ḥayri ḥaqiqin.

\textsuperscript{775} With some hesitation I follow the Glossarium, CXXIX. The Arabic reads fa-mā la-ka bi-lladhi takhī yadānī.

\textsuperscript{776} Yahyā b. Sa‘īd b. Mikhnaf, father of Abū Mikhnaf.

\textsuperscript{777} Tamīm b. Murr, a huge confederation of northern tribal groups inhabiting the general area of Najd, al-Yamāmah and Bahrain. See Ibn Ḥazm, \textit{jamāharah}, 207, 466–67; Kaḥṭālah, \textit{Mū’jam}, 1, 126–33.

\textsuperscript{778} That is, Sa‘d b. Abī Waqqāṣ.
sign of the cross between his eyes. Šuhayb heard of this and sent 'Amr b. al-‘Āš to (‘Ubaydallāh). He kept at him, saying "[Give me] the sword, by my mother and father!" until he handed it over to him. Sa’d sprang upon him, took him by the hair and they all came to Šuhayb.

"Umar's Governors in the Garrison Towns"


According to al-Wāqīdī, Qatādah b. al-Nu'mān al-Ẓafārī?83 died in 23 and "Umar prayed over him."

In (this year) Mu'āwiyyah launched a summer offensive and reached Amorium,?84 accompanied by some of the Companions of the Messenger of God; viz., 'Ubūdah b. al-Ṣāmit,?85 Abū

---

?779. I have no further information on Nāfi' b. 'Abd al-Ḥārith al-Khuţā'ī. For the following list, see Ya'qūbī, Tārikh, II, 161.

?780. Sufyān b. 'Abdallāh al-Thaqāfī has a brief entry in Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IV, 115–16, although no date of death is given.

?781. Ya'lä was more commonly known as Ya'lä b. Umayyah; see note 105. Nawfal b. 'Abd Manāf was a tribal group (baṭn) of Quraysh. See Zubayrī, Nasab Quraysh, 197–205; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharah, 113–17; Kaḥḥālah, Mu'jam, III, 1102–3.

?782. Al-Janad is very close to, and at the present time a suburb of, the important town of Ta'izz in the southern highlands of the Yemen. It was of great importance in early and medieval times and the seat of one of the three governors in the Yemen, along with Ṣan'a' and Ḥaḍramawt (not here mentioned). See Hamdāni, Sīfah, 44, 54–55 and passim; Kay, Yaman, end map.

?783. Qatādah b. al-Nu'mān al-Ẓafārī fought at Badr, a fact mentioned in the biographies, e.g., Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VIII, 357–58.

?784. Byzantine Amorion, Arabic 'Ammūriyyah, in the heart of Asia Minor, only approximately 170 miles southeast of Constantinople. See Yaqūt, Mu'jam, IV, 158; Runciman, Crusades, I, Map 176.

?785. 'Ubūdah b. al-Ṣāmit died in 34/654 or later. He had been present at the battle of Badr. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, V, 111ff.
The Events of the Year 23

Ayyūb Khalid b. Zayd,786 Abū Dharr,787 and Shaddād b. Aws.788

In (this year) Muʿāwiya conquered Ascalon789 by making peace [with its inhabitants.]

It was reported that Shurayḥ was judge of al-Kūfah in the year in which 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb died; judge of al-Baṣrah was Kaʾb b. Sūr.790 According to Muṣ'ab b. 'Abdallāh—Mālik b. Anas791— Ibn Shihāb: Abū Bakr and 'Umar had no judge.

787. Abū Dharr al-Ghifārī died ca. 32/653. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, XII, 90ff.; el-Ef, s.v. [Robson]; Cameron, Abū Dharr, passim.
789. 'Asqalān on the Mediterranean coast north of Gaza. See Yaqūt, Muʿjam, IV, 122; Le Strange, Palestine, 400–3 and map opposite 14.
790. For Kaʾb b. Sūr al-Azdi, see Wākiʾ, Akhbar, I, 274ff.
791. Mālik b. Anas was the author of the famous Muwaṭṭaʾ and died in 179/796. See Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, X, 5–91; Sezgin, GAS, I, 457–64.

'Abd al-Baqi, Muhammad Fu'ad. *Al-Mu’jam al-mufahras li-alfāz al-Qur‘ān al-karīm.* [Cairo], 1378 A.H.


Bal’ami, see al-Tabari.


Bel’ami, Abou’Ali Mo’hammed; see al-Tabari.


———. *Sīstān under the Arabs.* Rome, 1968.


Bibliography


Cambridge History of Iran, ed. R. N. Frye. IV. The Period from the Arab Invasion to the Saljuqs. Cambridge, 1975 [CHIr].


Christensen, A. L'Iran sous les Sassanides. Copenhagen, 1936.


Justi, Ferdinand. *Iranisches Namenbuch.* Marburg, 1895.


Bibliography


Lambrick, H. T. *Sind, a General Introduction.* Hyderabad [Sind], 1964.


———. *Palestine under the Moslems.* London, 1890.


Sauvaire, M. A. "Matériaux pour servir à l’histoire de la numismatique
Bibliography


The index contains all proper names of persons, places, and tribal and other groups, as well as topographical data, occurring in the foreword, the text, and the footnotes, together with some technical terms. As far as the footnotes are concerned, however, only those names that belong to the medieval or earlier periods are listed. The definite article, the abbreviations b. (for ibn, son) and bt. (for bint, daughter), and everything in parentheses have been disregarded for the purposes of alphabetization. Where a name occurs in both the text and the footnotes on the same page, only the page number is given.

A

Abān b. Abī 'Amr b. Umayyah b. 'Abd Shams 91 n. 404
Abān Jādawayh, governor of al-Rayy 32
'Abbād b. Ziyād 76 n. 339
'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib 143, 147
'Abbās b. Abī Ṭālīb, ṭawī 103, 104
'Abd al-'Azīz, ṭawī 161
'Abd al-Ḥamīd b. Bayān, ṭawī 139
'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān 42
'Abd al-Malik b. Nawfāl b. Musāḥiq, ṭawī 132
'Abd al-Malik b. Sulaymān, ṭawī 117
'Abd al-Mun'im b. Idris, ṭawī 106 n. 514
'Abd al-Qays 53 n. 251
'Abd al-Rahiṃān, the eldest son of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb 100, 101
'Abd al-Rahīmān, the middle son of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb 101
'Abd al-Rahīmān, the youngest son of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb 101
'Abd al-Rahīmān b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Ḥakam al-Miṣrī, ṭawī 98
'Abd al-Rahīmān b. Abī Bakr al-Ṣiddiq 100, 163
'Abd al-Rahīmān b. Abī Zayd, ṭawī 139
'Abd al-Rahīmān b. 'Amr 13
'Abd al-Rahīmān b. 'Awf 90–93, 109, 112, 145–58, 160, 161
'Abd al-Rahīmān b. Jaz' al-Sulāmī, religious scholar 45, 46
'Abd al-Rahīmān b. Khālid b. al-Walid al-Makhzūmī 46
'Abd al-Rahīmān b. Mahdi, ṭawī 10, 107, 141
'Abd al-Rahīmān b. Rabī'ah, Dhū al-Nūr 5, 34, 35, 37–42
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Abd al-Rahmân b. Zayd</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abd al-Razzâq b. Hammâm</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abd Shams</td>
<td>91, 404, 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. 'Abdallâh b.'Ibân</td>
<td>3-9, 44, 73, 74, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Abi Bakr</td>
<td>101, 123, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Abi Is'hâq</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Abi Rabi'ah,</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Abi Sulaymân,</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Abi 'Uqayl</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Abi'Ugayl</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Abi Rabi'ah,</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Abi'Ugayl</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Abdallah b. Budayl b. Warqâ al-Khuzâ'i</td>
<td>4, 5, 22, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Dâwûd al-Wâsiţi</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. al-Hârîth b. Warqâ al-Asadi</td>
<td>4, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Ja'far b. Abi Tâlib</td>
<td>85, 155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Ja'far al-Zuhri</td>
<td>89, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Kathir al-'Abdî</td>
<td>83, 87-89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Mas'ûd</td>
<td>5, 6, 14, 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Qays al-Ash'âthi</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Thâlabah b. Ŝu'ayr</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. 'Umar, son of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭâb</td>
<td>12, 92, 98, 100, 142, 144-48, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. 'Umarî</td>
<td>75, 134, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. al-Walîd, râwî</td>
<td>112, 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. Warqâ al-Riyyâhi</td>
<td>4, 6, 7, 9, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdallâh b. al-Zubayr</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû al-'Abbas, Abbasid caliph</td>
<td>97 n. 444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû al-'Abbâs Sahl b. Sa'd al-Sâ'îdî</td>
<td>râwî 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû 'Abd al-Ra'hîmân al-Fazârî</td>
<td>râwî 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû 'Abdallâh al-Burjumî, râwî</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû 'Amîr 'Abd al-Malîk b. 'Amr al-'Aqadî, râwî</td>
<td>109, 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû 'Amr. See 'Uthmân b. 'Affân</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû 'Amr, client of Ibrâhîm b. Ŝâlîhah, râwî</td>
<td>85, 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû 'Amr b. al-'Alî, râwî</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû 'Amr Dhakwân, râwî</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ayyûb Khâlid b. Zayd, Companion</td>
<td>164, 165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Bakr b. 'Abdallâh b. Abi Maryam, râwî</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Bakr al-'Abî, râwî</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Bakr b. 'Ayyâsh, râwî</td>
<td>107, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Bakr b. Ismâ'il b. Muḥammâd b. Sa'd, râwî</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Bakr al-Sîddîq, xiii, xiv, 92-94, 97</td>
<td>n. 447, 102, 116, 132, 136, 140, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. 703, 143 n. 713, 144 n. 725, 151, 154, 159, 160, 163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Dharr al-Ghîfârî, Companion</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû al-Dihqânâh, râwî</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Dujânâh</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Fîrâs al-Rabi'ah b. Ziyâd al-Nahdî, râwî</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ḥafṣ, kunyah of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭâb</td>
<td>57, 95, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ḥâzmâh Muḥammâd b. Maymûn al-Sûkkârî, râwî</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ḥârîthâh, râwî</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû al-Ḥâsan. See 'Alî b. Abî Ţâlib</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ḥâshîm b. 'Utba b. Rabi'ah b. Abû Šâms</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ḥaṣîn 'Uthmân b. Āṣîm, râwî</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ḥayyân Yâbîyâ b. Sa'id, râwî</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ḥâzârâ Ya'qûb b. Muḥâhid, râwî</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ḥilîl, râwî</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ḥudhâyfâh</td>
<td>2 n. 8, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Hurayrah al-Dawsî</td>
<td>40, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû al-Ḥuwayrîth 'Abd al-Raḥmân b. Mu'âwiyyâh, râwî</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû 'I'mrân al-Jawnî, râwî</td>
<td>10, 106</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

'Āqil b. Abī 'Ṭalīb, genealogist 115
'Āqilah, slave girl 80 n. 358, 81, 82
aqta'a, grant as a land concession 74 n. 329
Arabian Peninsula xiii, 122 n. 611, 133 n. 667
Aras, river 37 n. 182, 38 n. 188
arbâ', quarters (of Khurāsān) 60 n. 278
Ardashir Khurrah 64, 66 n. 296
Armenia 36, 37, 45
Armenians 33, 36
Arwa bt. Kurayz, mother of 'Uthmān b.
'Affān 162 n. 770
Asad b. Mūsā, ṭawī 88
Ascalon 165
al-Ash'ath b. Qays 13
Asia Minor 32, 164 n. 784
Asid b. al-Mutashammis, ṭawī 9, 83
'Āṣim, son of 'Umar b. Khâṭṭāb 101
'Āṣim b. Abī Al-Najjūd, ṭawī 96, 97
'Āṣim b. 'Amr al-Tamīmi 75
'Āṣim b. Kulayb, ṭawī 66, 112, 113
'Āṣim b. Thābit b. Abī Al-Aqlah 101
'Āṣim b. 'Ubaydallāh, ṭawī 97
Aslam, father of Zayd b. Aslam,
ṛawī 105, 110, 111, 119
'Asqalān. See Ascalon
al-Aswād b. Yazīd, ṭawī 141, 142
'Atā' b. al-Sā'īb, ṭawī 118
athqāl, treasures 59
'Ātkah bt. 'Awf, mother of al-Miswar
b. Makhramah 89, 155
'Ātkah bt. Zayd b. 'Amr b. Nufayl,
wife of 'Umar b. Al-Khaṭṭāb 101, 129
al-'Ātiqah, ancient Rayy 25
'Attāb b. Asid, governor of Mecca 42
'Awānah b. al-Ḥakam al-Kalbi,
ṛawī 121
'Awf b. Mālik al-Asḥa'ī, ṭawī 94
'Ayyūb, mountain 118 n. 580
Ayyūb al-Shakhtiyānī, ṭawī 98, 106
al-Azīd 117 n. 575
al-Azhdāhāq. See Shahrak
Azerbaijan xv, 1, 3, 10, 17, 21, 22, 26,
31–34, 36, 44, 45
Azhdāhāq 70 n. 312

Āl al-Zubayr b. al-'Awāmm 119 n. 385
al-'Ălā', governor of Bahrain 65
Alexandria xv
'Ali b. Abī 'Ṭalīb 2 n. 8, 5 n. 22, 44, 45,
55, 72, 85 n. 379, 86, 91, 93, 100 n.
471, 104, 115, 121 n. 608, 129, 135,
143 n. 773, 144–53, 157–61
'Ali b. Muḥammad, ṭawī. See al-
Maddâ'īnī
'Ali b. Muḥammad, ṭawī 74, 123
'Ali b. Sahl al-Ramli, ṭawī 141
Allān 37
'Alqamah b. 'Abdallāh al-Muzānī,
ṛawī 10
'Alqamah b. Marthad, ṭawī 83
'Alqamah b. al-Naḍr al-Nāḍrī 54
'Ām al-Ramādāh. See Destruction
al-'A'mash, Sulaymān b. Mīhrān,
ṛawī 141, 143
'Āmir b. Abī Muḥammad, ṭawī 94
'Āmir al-Sha'īb 15, 48, 73, 95, 99, 106,
120
'Ammār b. Yāsir 2, 3, 5, 6, 14, 16, 43,
47–49, 152
'Ammuriyyah. See Amorium
Amorion. See Amorium
Amorium 164
'Amr, proper name in poetry 39
'Amr b. Abī Sufyān 133, 134
'Amr b. 'Āli, ṭawī 10
'Amr b. al-'Āṣ 13, 14, 101, 102, 108,
148, 161, 162, 164
'Amr b. Bilāl b. al-Ḥārith 19
'Amr b. Ma'di Karīb al-Zubayrī 12, 40
'Amr b. Maymūn al-Awdī, ṭawī 143,
151
'Amr b. Muḥammad, ṭawī 2, 18, 43,
51, 64, 70, 73, 80, 95, 142
Āmul 76
Anas b. Zunaym al-Dīlī 135 n. 676
'Anazāh 80
al-Anbār 105
Antābulus 13
Antioch 15
Anūshīrāvān 38 n. 189
Apostasy, wars of. See Riddah wars
Index

Cilicia 15
Constantinople 164 n. 784
Ctesiphon 4 n. 20, 48

D
Dabbah b. Miḥṣan 80–82
95
Dabbah b. Udd 19 n. 95
al-Ḍāḥhāk b. Qays al-Fihri 155
Dājnān 131
Damascus 15, 155 n. 732, 164
Damāvand 25 n. 136
Dāmghān 28 n. 156
Dāmrāb b. Rabī‘ah al-Ramlī, ṭawī 141
daqal, poor quality dates 77
Darābijīd 70, 71
Muḥammad, ṭawī 98
Dastābā 20, 21, 22, 24
David 157
Dāwūd b. Abī Hind, ṭawī 99
Daylām 20, 21, 23 n. 121, 27 n. 149
Destruction, Year of the 119
dhimmat, protection 23 n. 124
Dhū al-Ḍāqīb b. Zayd, ṭawī 101
Dhū al-Qarnayn 42 n. 206
Dihistān 29
dihqān, village headman 80 n. 359
al-Dīnawar 18, 19, 43 n. 206, 44 n. 212
Dirār b. Murrah al-Kūfī, ṭawī 103
diwan, state register 115
Dujayl 8 n. 41
Dunbawand 25–27

E
Egypt xv, 15, 104, 112, 164
electoral council, sbārā xvii, 93, 95,
143, 147–49, 152, 154, 155
Emigrants 92, 113, 141, 142, 151, 161, 162
Euphrates 5, 6, 106
Event, The, Sūrat al-Wāqī‘ah 136

F
al-Fādhūsafán 7–9
al-Farazdaq, Hammām b. Ghālib b.
Ṣa‘ṣa‘ah, poet 154
Fāghanāh 56, 59, 62
ṣafir, frontier region 29 n. 158
[al-]Farrukhān 25, 30
Fārs xiv, xv, 1, 10, 52, 64 nn. 283–84,
65, 67–69, 73, 73
al-Fārūq, epithet of ‘Umar b. al-
Khaṭṭāb 95, 96
Fasā 70, 71
Fāṭimah, daughter of the Prophet
Muḥammad 101
Fāṭimah, daughter of ‘Umar b. al-
Khaṭṭāb 100, 150 n. 737
Fāṭimah bt. Qays al-Fihriyyah, sister of
al-Ḍāḥhāk b. Qays al-Fihri 155,
161
fay’, immovable booty 18 n. 94
Fayruz. See Abū Lu’lu’ah
al-Fayrūzān 19, 53
fitr (of booty) 22, 77, 80
Fihr 155 n. 752
ṣīr, conflicts 98 n. 450
Firūzābād 66 n. 296
al-Firūzābādī, Muḥammad b.
Ya’qūb 58 n. 276, 158 n. 759
Fukhayhah, concubine of ‘Umar b. al-
Khaṭṭāb 101
furūj. See ṣafir

G
Gabriel 142
Gaza 165 n. 789
Georgia 37 n. 183
ghanam, sheep 112 n. 541
Ghūrak 56
al-Ghuṣn b. al-Qāsim, ṭawī 39
Ghūzak. See Ghūrak
Gog 42 n. 201

H
Ḥabib b. Abī Thābit, ṭawī 141
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Habib b. Maslamah al-Fihri</td>
<td>34, 35, 45, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hadramawt</td>
<td>164 n. 782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hafsa, daughter of 'Umar b. al-Khattab</td>
<td>35, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hašramawt</td>
<td>164 n. 782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hafgah, daughter of 'Umar b. al-Khattab</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Hajjaj b. Dinar al-Ashja'</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Hakam b. Abi 'Ash b. Bishr</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duhman al-Thaqafi</td>
<td>60-70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Hakam b. 'Amr al-Taghlibi</td>
<td>77, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamadhan</td>
<td>6 n. 6, 3, 17-24, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamalah b. Juwayyab</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Hamdan</td>
<td>2 n. 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Hamdani</td>
<td>110 n. 535, 117 nn. 575-77, 118 n. 580, 164 n. 782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hammad b. Salamah</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamal b. Abi Haridah</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hanifa</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hannad b. al-Sari</td>
<td>96, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hantahmah bt. Hāshim, mother of 'Umar b. al-Khattab</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Hārith b. Hassān al-Dhuhi</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Hārith b. Muḥammad, rāwī</td>
<td>89, 93, 95-97, 99, 100, 102, 113-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥarrah, lava field</td>
<td>110 n. 534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥarrat Wāqim</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ḥasan, rāwī</td>
<td>67, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ḥasan b. 'Ali b. Abi 'Ali b. Abi Tilib</td>
<td>150 n. 737</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ḥasan al-Ḫurayb</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hātim b. al-Nu'mān al-Bahlil</td>
<td>54, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawrān</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helpers</td>
<td>92, 101, 113, 142, 146, 151, 161, 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heraclius xiv</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herat</td>
<td>52 n. 248, 53, 60 n. 278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hijāz</td>
<td>133 n. 667</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hijrah</td>
<td>17, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḥilm, forbearance</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥimṣ</td>
<td>5, 13, 15, 44, 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hind b. 'Amr al-Jamali/Al-Murād</td>
<td>27, 30, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hind b. 'Utba b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Thaqafi, rāwī</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hishām b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Thaqafi, rāwī</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hishām al-Kalbi, rāwī</td>
<td>95, 99, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hishām b. Sa'd, rāwī</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hishām b. 'Urwa b. al-Zubayr, rāwī</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥizām b. Hishām al-Ka'bi, rāwī</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥūd</td>
<td>131 n. 650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥudhayfāh b. Asād al-Ghifārī</td>
<td>5, 34, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥudhayfāh b. al-Yamān</td>
<td>5, 6, 13, 18, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥulwān</td>
<td>4, 18, 51 n. 246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥusayn</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Hurmuza</td>
<td>45, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Hurmuza, rāwī</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥusayn al-Murūd, rāwī</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥusayn, be recruited for military service/suffer distress</td>
<td>33 n. 172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ḫutay'ah, Abū Malaykāh Jarwal b. Awa s 81, 82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iblis</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn 'Abbas, rāwī</td>
<td>122, 135-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam</td>
<td>13 n. 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn 'Abd Rabbih, Abū al-Muḥammad</td>
<td>129 n. 640, 130 n. 737</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muḥammad al-Andalusī xix, 26 n. 142, 89 n. 394, 143 n. 714, 151 n. 74, 153 n. 746</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abi 'Adi, Muḥammad al-Qasmali rāwī</td>
<td>99, 106, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abi 'Aribah, rāwī</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abi Sarḥ, 'Iyād b. 'Abdallāh b. Sa'd</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn 'Affān. See 'Uthmān b. 'Affān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Arwa. See 'Uthmān b. 'Affān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Ibn al-Athir, 'Izz al-Dīn xix, 3 n. 10 and 12, 6 n. 33, 8 n. 43, 12 n. 58,
Index

180

14 n. 70, 17 n. 90, 20 nn. 105-6, 21
nn. 110-11, 24 n. 133, 25 n. 137,
26 n. 141, 30 n. 162, 34 nn. 174 and
176, 46 n. 244, 49 n. 243, 53 n. 255,
65 nn. 286-87, 66 n. 295, 67 n.
300, 68 nn. 301 and 304, 79 nn.
355-56, 83 n. 368, 89 nn. 391 and
394, 92 n. 412, 94 n. 423, 95 n. 429,
100 n. 470, 103 n. 481, 115 nn. 563
and 566, 129 n. 640, 130 n. 643,
131 n. 649, 133 n. 661, 136 n. 681,
143 n. 714, 148 n. 732, 158 n. 758,
162 nn. 769 and 772

Ibn 'Awf. See 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Awf
Ibn 'Awn, ṭawī 141
Ibn al-Bara'ī b. Ma'rūr, ṭawī 113
Ibn Bashshār, Muḥammad, ṭawī 107,
109, 141
Ibn Budayl. See 'Abdallāh b. Budayl
Ibn Da'b, ṭawī 122, 129
Ibn al-Dabbīgh. See al-Mughirah b.
Shu'bah
Ibn Fudayl, Muḥammad al-Ḍabbī, ṭawī 103
Ibn Ḥajār, Ḥiẓam b. 'Ali al-'Aṣqālānī
2 n. 4, 3 nn. 9-10, 12, and 14, 5 nn.
24, 26, and 28, 6 n. 34, 8 nn. 42-44,
9 n. 46, 10 n. 47-49, 13 n. 66, 14
n. 69, 15 nn. 74-75 and 77, 19 n.
99, 20 nn. 104-5, 21 nn. 109-10,
26 nn. 141 and 143, 34 nn. 175-76,
37 n. 181, 40 n. 196, 42 n. 205, 48
nn. 233-35, 49 n. 243, 53 nn. 251,
253, and 255, 55 nn. 266-67, 65
nn. 286-87, 66 nn. 293 and 295, 68
nn. 304 and 306, 69 n. 310, 71 nn.
316-17, 74 n. 326, 83 nn. 370 and
374-75, 88 nn. 386-90, 89 nn.
393, 395, and 397-98, 90 n. 401, 91
nn. 405-7, 94 nn. 418, 420-21,
and 426, 96 nn. 432-41, 97 nn.
444-45 and 447-49, 98 n. 451-
58 and 460-61, 99 nn. 462-65 and
467-68, 103 nn. 479-80 and 484-
87, 104 nn. 490, 492-93, and 495-
96, 105 nn. 498-500, 502-4, and
508-9, 106 nn. 511 and 513-14,
107 nn. 518-23, 108 nn. 525-27,
109 nn. 529-31, 110 n. 532, 112
nn. 533-40 and 543, 113 nn. 554-
45, 547, and 549, 114 nn. 554-55,
115 nn. 562 and 565, 118 nn. 581-
84, 121 nn. 600, 604, and 607, 122
n. 610, 123 nn. 614-17 and 619-
20, 129 n. 635, 131 n. 646-47,
132 nn. 652 and 657, 134 n. 671,
136 n. 680, 138 nn. 687-89, 139
nn. 690 and 692, 141 nn. 705 and
708-10, 142 n. 711, 143 nn. 716-
17, 720, and 722, 146 n. 730, 152 n.
742, 164 nn. 780, 783, and 785, 165
nn. 786-88 and 791

Ibn Ḥantamah. See 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb
Ibn Ḥazm, 'Alī b. Ahmad al-Andalusi
3 n. 10, 4 n. 19, 10 nn. 50 and 52,
18 n. 93, 23 n. 122, 53 n. 253, 55 n.
268, 80 n. 357, 91 n. 404, 113 n.
550, 116 nn. 569-70, 117 n. 575,
118 n. 583, 119 nn. 590 and 592-
93, 132 n. 659, 133 nn. 667, 136 nn.
678 and 681, 152 nn. 744, 163 n.
777, 164 n. 781

Ibn Hishām, 'Abd al-Malik 42 n. 204,
43 n. 290, 65 n. 290, 100 n. 469,
134 n. 673, 135 nn. 674-75, 140 n.
702, 144 n. 724, 145 n. 726

Ibn Ḥumayd, Muḥammad al-Rāzī, ṭawī 15, 95, 114, 136, 142
Ibn ʿIrīs, 'Abdallāḥ, ṭawī 106
Ibn Ištāq, Muḥammad, ṭawī 15, 95,
123

Ibn Juʿdubah, ṭawī. See Yazīd b. Ἰ'yāḍ
Ibn Jurayj, 'Abd al-Malik b. 'Abd al-
ʿAzīz, ṭawī 98, 142
Ibn al-Khaṭṭāb. See 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb
Ibn Khuzaymāh b. Thābit al-Anṣārī,
'Umārah, ṭawī 113
Ibn Manṣūr, Muḥammad b. Mukarram
58 n. 276, 148 n. 734, 158 n. 759
Ibn Masʿūd. See 'Abdallāḥ b. Masʿūd
Ibn al-Munkadīr, Muḥammad, ṭawī
123
Ibn al-Muthannâ, Abû Mûsâ, rawi 99, 106
Ibn Rasûl, al-Malik al-Asraf 'Umar b. Yusuf 93 n. 414
Ibn Sa'd, Muhammed, rawi and biographer 2 n. 8, 5 nn. 24 and 29, 14 n. 69, 15 n. 83, 46 n. 224, 89, 93, 95–97, 99, 100, 102, 113–20
Ibn Shihâb al-Zuhri, rawi 94, 96, 118, 123, 163
Ibn Sumayyah. See 'Ammâr b. Yâsir
Ibn 'Tarîf. See 'Ismah
Ibn 'Ulayyah, rawi 141
Ibn 'Umar. See Abdallih b. 'Umar
Ibn Umm Ghazal al-Hamdani 54
Ibn Wahb, 'Abdallâh, rawi 105
Ibn Ya'amr 148
Ibn Ziyâd. See Salm b. Ziyâd
Ibn al-Zubayr. See 'Abdallâh b. al-Zubayr
Ibnat Abi Hâthmah 129
Ibrâhîm b. Muhammed, rawi 122
Ibrâhîm b. Taâlîhah, rawi 88 n. 366
Ibrâhîm b. Yazid al-Nakha'i, rawi 141, 143
Idhaj 43, 44
Ifrigiyah 14 n. 72
'Il 18
ikhshid, ruler 56 n. 271
'lKrimah, rawi 136
'lKrimah b. 'Ammâr, rawi 138
'Imrân, rawi 113
'Imrân b. Sawâdâh, rawi 139
Indus xv, 77 n. 343
iqâmah, second call to prayer 95 n. 427
Iran xii, 1, 2 n. 6
Iraq xiv, 1, 44
'Isâ b. Hafsa, rawi 113
'Isâ b. Muâhirâh, rawi 55
'Isâ b. Yazid b. Da'âb, rawi 139
isbahbadh, ruler 17
Istahhân xv, 1, 44, 52, 53, 80, 83
al-Istahhâni, Abû al-Faraj 13 n. 66, 24 n. 131, 26 n. 142, 38 n. 185, 55, 81 n. 364, 129 n. 640, 136 n. 677, 155 n. 752
Isfandiyâdh, brother of Rustam 21, 31–33
Ishâq b. 'Isâ, rawi 17, 64, 68, 94
'Ismah b. Abdallâh b. 'Ubaydah b. Sayf
b. 'Abd b. al-Hârîth al-Ḍabbî 6, 9, 20, 21 n. 116
Ismâ'il b. Abî Hâkim al-Qurashi, rawi 131
Ismâ'il b. Abî Khâlid, rawi 48, 139
Ismâ'il b. Ibrâhîm al-Asadi, rawi 103, 104, 106, 108
Ismâ'il b. Muhammed b. Sa'd, rawi 118
Israelites 35, 157
Ištâkhr 64, 66–68, 70
'Iyâd b. Ghamm al-Fihri 46, 112
Iyâs b. Salamah, rawi 138

J

al-Jabal 20 n. 102
al-Jabbânah 119
Jâbir b. 'Amr al-Muzani 5
Jâbir b. Yazid al-Ju'ti, rawi 94, 114
Ja'far b. 'Awn, rawi 83, 87, 89
Ja'far b. Muhammed al-Kûfi, rawi 103
Jalûlâ' 51
Jamilah, wife of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭâb 100
Jamsad 70 n. 312
al-Janad 164
Jarir, poet 154 n. 750
Jarir b. Abdallâh al-Bajali 47, 48
Jarir b. Hâzim, rawi 98
Jarmidhâh b. al-Farrukhzâdh 31
Jarmidhân 20
al-Jârûd b. 'Amr al-'Abdî, Abû al-Mundhir 69
Jâsim 158
al-Jawf 133 n. 667
Jaxartes, river 54 n. 258, 56 n. 272
Jayy 7, 44, 53, 80
al-Jazîrah 15, 34, 44, 45, 46 n. 224, 50, 104
Jerusalem 143 n. 723
Jesus 157
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Māh al-Kūfah</td>
<td>18 n. 91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mahdi, Abbasid caliph</td>
<td>123 n. 616</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makhlad al-Bakri, rāwī</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makhramah b. Nawfal, genealogist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makrān xv, 53 n. 251, 77, 78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malādh, river</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mālik</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mālik b. Anas</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malwiyyah, rock</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manādhir</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manṣūr b. Abī al-Aswad al-Laythi, rāwī</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manṣūr b. al-Mu'تamir al-Sulami, rāwī</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ma‘qil b. Yasār al-Muzani, rāwī</td>
<td>9, 10, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mardānshāh, ruler of Dunbāwand</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marāfī b. Muqarrin</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mari</td>
<td>field 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marj al-Qal‘ah</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marj Rāḥīf</td>
<td>155 n. 752</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marw 52, 53 n. 256, 58–61, 76 n. 338</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marw al-Rūdāh</td>
<td>53, 54, 56, 58, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marw al-Shāhījān</td>
<td>52 n. 248, 53, 54, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marwān b. al-Ḥakam</td>
<td>150, 155 n. 752</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marzaba, to appoint governor</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marzbān, governor</td>
<td>67 n. 229, 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māsabdhān</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masālīb, frontier regions</td>
<td>20 n. 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māsjīd Simāk, in al-Kūfah</td>
<td>24 n. 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māsλamah b. Mūḥārizb, rāwī</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māsmughān, religious leader</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Māṣ‘ūdī, 'Ali b. al-Ḥuṣayn</td>
<td>10 n. 53, 89 n. 394, 95 n. 429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māṣrār b. Thalj al-Tamīmī, rāwī</td>
<td>40–42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mecca</td>
<td>15, 42, 91 n. 403, 100 n. 470, 117 nn. 575–77, 131 n. 648, 132 n. 659, 134 n. 673, 140 n. 733, 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medina xiii, xvi–xviii, 12 n. 59, 15, 73, 82, 110 nn. 534–35, 111, 112, 113 n. 530, 119, 122, 131 n. 648, 134, 138 n. 689, 141, 150, 151, 163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messenger of God. See Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh, the Prophet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mīhrājānquḍāh</td>
<td>44, 49, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minā</td>
<td>148 n. 733</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīnbar</td>
<td>111, 113, 158, 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Miṣqād b. 'Amīr al-Aswad al-Kindi</td>
<td>146, 148, 152, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mīsawar b. Makhramah</td>
<td>89, 148, 150, 151, 154, 155, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mōses</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mosul</td>
<td>3 n. 16, 4, 44, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mū‘āwiyyah b. Abī Sufyān</td>
<td>15, 20 n. 104, 21 n. 109, 34 n. 176, 42, 44, 45, 46 n. 222, 76, 100, 132 n. 658, 133, 134, 141, 143 n. 713, 161 n. 767, 164, 165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūdar</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Muṣṭarīb b. 'Ijli</td>
<td>26, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūqān, See Mūqān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mūghirah b. Shu‘bāh</td>
<td>10–12, 14, 17, 21, 50, 51, 63, 89, 92, 129, 148, 154, 164, 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūghkān, See Mūqān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mūḥājjīr b. Ziyād</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūḥalhil b. Zayd al-Tamīmī</td>
<td>19, 20, 21 n. 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Muḥallab b. Abī Ṣufrah</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Muḥallab b. 'Uqbah al-Asadi, rāwī</td>
<td>2, 9, 18, 43, 51, 64, 70, 73, 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh, the Prophet, the Messenger of God xiii, xiv,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh, the Prophet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Sawād, rāwī</td>
<td>2, 9, 18, 43, 51, 64, 70, 73, 80, 106, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr, rāwī</td>
<td>50, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Awf, rāwī</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. Ibrāhim, rāwī</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Ilīn, rāwī</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Muhammad b. Ishâq, râwî 136, 139, 141
Muhammad b. Muș'âb al-Qarqasânî, râwî 119–20
Muhammad b. Muslim b. Shihâb al-Zuhri. See Ibn Shihâb
Muhammad b. al-Muthâna, râwî 107
Muhammad b. Sa'd. See Ibn Sa'd
Muhammad b. Śâlih b. Dînâr, râwî 121, 132
Muhammad b. Sûqah, râwî 66
Muhammad b. 'Umar. See al-Waqidi
Muhammad b. Yazîd, râwî 139
Muḥârib b. Fihr 119
al-Muḥâṣṣîb 148
Mujâlid b. Sa'id b. 'Umayr, râwî 48, 73, 93, 122
Mujâshî 'b. Maš'ûd al-Sulami 65, 66
al-Mu'ak'âr, Azâdîh Fûrûz b.
Jushnas 69
al-Mukhtâr b. Abî 'Ubây d b. Maš'ûd al-Thaqâfî 47
Mukkurîn. See Makrân
Mukrân. See Makrân
Mulaykah bt. Jarwal, wife of 'Umar b. al-Khâṣṭâb 100
muḥâmisah, prostitute 5 n. 27
al-Mundhir b. 'Amr 25
Mûqân 37, 38
Murghâb, river 52 n. 248
Mûsâ b. 'Uqâbah, râwî 121
Mûsâ b. Ya'qûb al-Za'mî, râwî 119
Muș'âb b. 'Abdallâh al-Zubayrî, râwî 110, 165
Muslim b. lbrâhim, râwî 113
Mûtâ, leader of the Daylam 21, 23, 24
muṭ'âh, temporary marriage 140
Muṭarrîf b. 'Abdallâh b. al-Shihkhîr
al-Ḥarâshî 53
Mûthâ. See Mûtâ
al-Muwaṭṭâ' 165 n. 791

N
al-Nâḍr b. Shumayl, râwî 103
Nâfî', client of 'Abdallâh b. 'Umar,
Nâfî b. 'Abd al-Ḥarîth al-Khuza'i, governor of Mecca 164
Nahr Tirâ 79, 80
al-Najâshî, Qays b. 'Amr 55
Najîd 163 n. 777
Najrân 93 n. 414
nâr, fire 52
Naysâbûr 53, 54, 60
Nihâwând, xv, 2, 4, 6, 8 n. 43, 11 n.
57, 12 n. 59, 18, 19, 22, 23 n. 126,
43 n. 206, 44 nn. 211–13
Nu'aym b. Ḥâmmâd, râwî 98
Nu'aym b. Muqarrîn 3, 19, 21–27, 31
Nubia 14 n. 72
al-Nu'mân b. Muqarrîn 3 n. 14, 5, 6, 9,
10, 12, 13, 18, 20, 37 n. 181, 44
Nuqum, mountain 118 n. 580
al-Nusayr b. 'Amr al-Ṭîlî 73
See al-Nusayr b. Thawr
al-Nusayr b. Thawr 18

O
Oman 66 n. 295, 158 n. 759
Oxus, river 54 n. 258, 56 n. 270, 75 n.
336, 76 n. 338

P
Palestine 15
Peninsula. See Arabian Peninsula
Persepolis 64 n. 283
Persia 1, 51, 62
Persians xv, 18, 22, 23, 37, 52, 59, 60,
91, 117 n. 639
Prophet. See Muḥammad b. 'Abdallâh,
the Prophet
Pulvar, river 64 n. 283

Q
qâbâṭî, fine cotton clothes 125
al-Qabj 32
al-Qâdisiyyah xiv, xv, 2 n. 7, 19 n. 96,
Index

Index

Sald b. Abi Waqqās xiv, xv, 2, 5, 51, 52, 91, 93, 120, 145-48, 150-52, 156, 157 n. 755, 158, 163 n. 778, 164
Sald b. Malik 163
Sald b. Mas'ud al-Thaqafi 47-49
Sald b. Qays b. 'Aylān 136 n. 681
sad, wall, rampart 4z n. zoi
Safwin b. 'Amr, rawi 104
al-Si'ib b. al-Agra' 8, 9
al-Sa'id b. Yazid, rāwī 118
Sa'id b. 'Amr b. Sa'id al-'Āṣ, rāwī 50
Sa'id al-Jurayyi, rāwī 108
Sa'id b. Khālid, rāwī 129
Sa'id b. al-Marbān, Abū Sa'd al-Baqqāl, rāwī 2, 9, 18, 43
Sa'id b. al-Musayyab, rāwī 131, 163
Sa'id b. Zayd b. 'Amr b. Nufayl 144, 145, 147
Sā'khr. See al-Aḥnaf
Salim, father of 'Umar 105
Salim b. Abi al-Ja'd al-Ashja'i, rāwī 107, 111
Salim b. Ghanm b. 'Aṣwī b. al-Khazraj 4 n. 19
Sallām b. Miskin, rāwī 113
Salmān b. Junādād, Abū al-Sā'id b., rāwī 89, 103, 154
Salmān al-Fārisi, rāwī 118
Salmān b. Rabī'ah 5, 34, 37, 39, 40
al-Sam'āni, 'Abd al-Karim b.
Muḥammad 99 n. 465
Samargand 54 n. 258
Sāmarra 51 n. 246
Ṣan'ā' 118, 164
Sarahs 53
al-Sari b. Yahyā, rāwī 2, 8, 9, 17, 39,
Index

Shu'bah b. al-Ḥajjāj, ṭawī 106, 107
al-Shuddakh, Ya’mar b. ‘Aqwī 148
shūrā. See electoral council
Shurayh b. al-Ḥarīth al-Kindi, qāḍī 16, 165
Ṣaffīn 2 n. 8, 4, 5 n. 22, 42 n. 205, 100, 161 n. 767
Ṣijistān xv, 75, 76
Ṣimāk, mosquē 24
Ṣimāk b. Kharashah al-Anṣāri 20, 21 n. 116, 22, 24, 27, 30, 31
Ṣimāk b. Muḥāya al-Asadi 20, 21 n. 116, 22, 24, 56, 30, 31
Ṣimāk b. ‘Ubayd al-‘Absī al-‘A♯l 20, 21 n. 116, 22, 31
Ṣind 75, 77, 78
Ṣirār 110, 119
Ṣiyāwakhah b. Mihrān b. Bahrām Shūbīn 24, 25
Ṣogdia 54, 56
Ṣolomon 131
spoilś. See booty
Ṣubbān, Sūrāt 139
ṣūfah, covering 150
Ṣufyān b. ‘Abdallāh al-Thaqafī, governor of al-Ṭā’if 164
Ṣufyān b. Sa’id al-Thawrī, ṭawī 96
Ṣufyān b. ‘Umayrah, ṭawī 105, 141
Ṣuḥr b. Fūlān/Sakhr al-‘Abdī 53, 77, 78 n. 345
Ṣuḥayb b. Sinān 91, 93, 95, 146, 148, 154, 164
Ṣuḥayl b. ‘Adī 8, 9, 73, 77, 78
Ṣulaymān b. Buraydah, ṭawī 83, 87
Ṣulaymān b. Śāliḥ al-Laythi, ṭawī 68
Ṣumayrah al-‘Aḏabiyyah 19
Ṣunnīs 44 n. 215
Ṣurāqah b. ‘Amr, Dhū al-Nūr 34–38
Ṣuwayd b. Muqarrīn 3 n. 14, 5, 19, 27–30, 37 n. 181
Ṣyrixa xiv, 15, 44, 45, 46 n. 224, 104, 115, 127, 143 n. 723

T
Ṭāb, river 68 n. 302
Ṭabaristan, Abū Ja’far Muḥammad b. Ḥarīrī xiii–xvi, xix, 1, 2 nn. 4 and 6, 3 n. 17, 4 n. 22, 5 n. 26, 8 n. 44, 11 n. 37, 12 n. 59, 13 n. 64, 15 n. 73 and 85, 17 n. 96, 21 n. 111, 34 nn. 175–76, 38 n. 187, 39 n. 193, 43 n. 209, 45 n. 216–17, 46 n. 222 and 224, 51 n. 246, 53 nn. 251 and 255, 54 n. 259–60, 63, 65 n. 286 and 290, 66 n. 295, 73 n. 331, 76 n. 339, 89, 93–95, 97 n. 442, 98, 102, 111, 113, 114, 134 n. 673, 135 n. 675, 154, 155 n. 752
Ṭabaristan xv, 17, 25, 28, 30, 76 n. 338
Ṭabas al-Tamr 53 n. 249
Ṭabas al-Unnāb 53 n. 249
Ṭabaṣayn 53 n. 249
Ṭaffī, envoy of Tiflis in Jurzan 45
Ṭā’if 15, 66 n. 295, 158 n. 759, 164
Ṭa’izz 164 n. 782
Ṭalḥah 133, 148
Ṭalḥah b. al-‘A♯lam al-Ḥanafī, ṭawī 2, 9, 18, 43, 51, 64, 70, 73, 80
Ṭalḥah b. Ubaydallāh 86, 91, 121, 145, 146, 153, 154, 157
Ṭalḥat al-Khayr b. Ubaydallāh. See Ṭalḥah b. Ubaydallāh
Ṭammī b. Murr xiii, 9 n. 45, 163 n. 777
tardīwī, Ramadān prayers 114 n. 359
Ṭāriqa b. Shīhāb al-Bajalī, ṭawī 107
Ṭāwīs 65
Ṭawwaj 64–66, 69
thaniyyah, mountain road 18
Ṭaniyyat al-‘Asal 19
Ṭaniyyat al-Rikāb 18
Ṭaqīf 8 n. 43
thughdr, frontier districts 20 n. 107
Ṭiflis 37, 45, 46
Ṭigris 4 n. 20, 5, 6
Ṭikrit xiv
Ṭorah 90
tribute xvi, 9, 13, 28, 29, 33, 46, 66
Truce. See al-Ḥudaybiyah
Ṭukharistan 54
Ṭurk 29, 38, 40, 56–60, 62, 75
U

'Ubādah b. al-Šamit, Companion 164
'Ubayd, ṭawī. See 'Ubaydallāh b. Sulaymān
'Ubaydah b. al-Ḥārith 135 n. 675
'Ubaydallāh, ṭawī 68
'Ubaydallāh b. Ma'mar al-Taymi 67, 70
'Ubaydallāh b. Sa'd al-Zuhri, ṭawī 112
'Ubaydallāh b. Sulaymān, ṭawī 69, see also 'Ubaydallāh
'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar b. al-Khattāb, ṭawī 98, 100, 111, 143, 161-64
'Umar b. 'Imrān b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al- Raqām b. Abi Bakr, ṭawī 97
'Umar b. Ismā'il b. Mujilid al-Hamdānī, ṭawī 105
'Umar b. Mūjāshī', ṭawī 120
'Umar b. Na'fī', ṭawī 104
'Umar b. Shabbaḥ, ṭawī 30, 94, 95, 100, 120-23, 129, 131, 134, 135, 143
'Umar b. Sulaymān b. Abī Ḥadhmah, ṭawī 120-22
'Umar b. Surāqāh al-Makhzūmī, governor of al-Baṣrah 3, 4, 43, 50, 83
'Umayr b. Sa'd al-Ansārī 13, 164
Umayyah 91 n. 404
Umm Abān bt. 'Utbah b. Rabī'ah 102
Umm 'Amr bt. Ḥāssān al-Kūfyah, ṭawī 114
Umm ʿ Ḥakim bt. al-Ḥārith, wife of 'Umar b. al-Khattāb 100
Umm Kultūm, daughter of 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib and wife of 'Umar b. al-Khattāb 72, 85, 86, 88, 101, 102
Umm Kultūm bt. Abī Bakr 101, 102
Umm Kultūm bt. Jarwāl, wife of 'Umar b. al-Khattāb 100

umm walad, concubine 13 n. 63, 140 n. 700
'umrah, lesser pilgrimage 140 n. 697
'Uqbah b. Na'fī' al-Fihrī 14
'Urwaḥ, envoy of Nu'aym b. Muqarrin 22
'Urwaḥ al-Raḥḥāl 98
'Urwaḥ b. al-Zubayr, ṭawī 123
'Usfān 117
'Uṯārid b. Ḥājib b. Zuwayrāh b. 'Udas/UDUS al-Tamīmī 43, 47
'Uṭaybah b. al-Nahhās al-Bakrī 26, 27, 30, 31
'Utbah b. Abī SuFYān, governor of Kīnānāh 132, 133
'Utbah b. Farqad al-Sulāmī 3, 31-34
'Uthmān b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān, ṭawī 94
'Uthmān b. Abī al-ʿĀṣ al-Ṭaquāfī 66-70, 164
'Uthmān b. 'Affān 21 n. 111, 30, 34 n. 176, 39, 40, 45 n. 117, 59, 60, 63, 67, 70, 91, 93-95, 103, 104, 115, 132, 143, 143 n. 713, 145-54, 156, 158-162, 163 n. 773
'Uthmān al-Akhnāsī 94
'Uthmān b. Ḥunayf 6, 14, 16

W

Wāj (al-)Rūdh 21-24, 31
Waki', Muḥammad b. Khala'f 165 n. 790
Waki' b. al-Jarrāḥ b. Malīḥ, ṭawī 96, 143
al-Walīd b. 'Abd Shams 49
al-Walīd b. Hishām b. al-Mughirah 115
al-Walīd b. Jumay', ṭawī 47
al-Walīd b. Kathīr, ṭawī 112
al-Waqīdī, Muḥammad b. 'Umar 4 n. 19, 13-15, 17, 20, 21, 42, 43 n. 209, 47, 64, 65 n. 290, 89, 93, 95-97, 99-102, 114-20, 135 n. 675, 140 n. 701, 144 n. 724, 164
washal, little water 77
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(rawi)</td>
<td>6 n. 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>witr, prayer</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahyā b. Ḥudayn, rawi</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahyā b. Kathir, rawi</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahyā b. Ma‘āin, rawi</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahyā b. Sa‘īd b. Mikhnaf, father of Abū Mikhnaf, rawi</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahyā b. Wādīh, rawi</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya‘lā b. Munyah/Umayyah, governor of the Yemen</td>
<td>42, 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Yamāmah</td>
<td>15, 18 n. 93, 43 n. 210, 163 n. 777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya‘mar b. ‘Awf</td>
<td>96, 103, 104, 106, 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya‘qub b. Ibrahim al-Anārī, rawi</td>
<td>139, 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya‘qub b. Ibrahim al-Juzajani, rawi</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya‘qub b. Ibrahim b. Sa‘d</td>
<td>96, 103, 104, 106, 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya‘qub b. Ishiq al-Harami, rawi</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ya‘qubi, Ahmad b. Abī Ya‘qub</td>
<td>xix, 13 n. 67, 14 n. 72, 17, 21 n. 111, 115 n. 565, 143 n. 714, 164 n. 779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya‘far, servant of ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb</td>
<td>85, 87, 88, 134, 135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yarmūk</td>
<td>3 n. 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazdgard. See Yazdajird</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazid b. ‘Abd al-Malik, Umayyad caliph</td>
<td>154 n. 750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazid b. ‘Iyād b. Ju‘dubah, rawi</td>
<td>123, 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazid b. Mu‘āwiyah</td>
<td>42, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazid b. al-Muhallab</td>
<td>154 n. 750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazid b. Qays al-Hamdānī</td>
<td>22–24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazid b. Rūmān al-Asadi, rawi</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yemen</td>
<td>15, 42, 118 n. 580, 122, 164 n. 782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yūnus b. ‘Abd al-A‘lā, rawi</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yūnus b. Abī Isḥāq, rawi</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yūnus b. ‘Ubayd, rawi</td>
<td>103, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yusuf b. Yazid, rawi</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Zabidi, Muhammad Murtaḍā</td>
<td>58 n. 276, 148 n. 734</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zādān, Abū ‘Abdallāh/‘Umar al-Kindi, rawi</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zākādh, alms</td>
<td>84 n. 376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zakariyya‘ b. Sīyah, rawi</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zaraḥ, lake</td>
<td>75 n. 333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zarānji</td>
<td>75, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zawilah</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zayd, son of ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zayd, the younger, son of ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zayd b. Akhzam al-Tā‘ī, rawi</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zayd b. Aslam, rawi</td>
<td>99, 110, 112, 121, 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zayd b. Thābit</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zaynab bt. (al-)Jaḥsh, wife of the Prophet</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zaynab bt. Maz‘ūn, wife of ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb</td>
<td>97 n. 442, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zaynab bt. ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb</td>
<td>97 n. 442, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Zinābi b. Qūlah Abū al-Furrakhān</td>
<td>21, 24–26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ziyād, client of Al-Ḥakam b. Abi al-‘Āq 69
Ziyād b. Abi Suфиān, governor of Al-Baṣrah 81, 82
Ziyād b. Ḥanžalah 3, 5, 6, 34
Ziyād b. Labīd al-Bayāḍī, a Helper 162, 163
al-Zubāy r b. al-‘Awwām 86, 91, 101, 129 n. 640, 143, 146, 150, 151, 156, 159
al-Zubāy r, al-Muṣʿab b. 'Abdallāh 3 n. 10, 91 n. 403, 116 nn. 569–70, 118 n. 585, 132 n. 659, 152 n. 744, 164 n. 781
Zuhayr b. Abī Sulmā, poet 136
al-Zuhrī. See Ibn Shihāb al-Zuhrī
Zunbil 76